

This Page Is Inserted by IFW Operations
and is not a part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of
the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images may include (but are not limited to):

- BLACK BORDERS
- TEXT CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- FADED TEXT
- ILLEGIBLE TEXT
- SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- COLORED PHOTOS
- BLACK OR VERY BLACK AND WHITE DARK PHOTOS
- GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning documents *will not* correct images,
please do not report the images to the
Image Problem Mailbox.



INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁵ : C07D 403/10, 223/16, 401/10 C07D 417/10, 227/10 C07K 5/06, C07D 281/10 A61K 31/33	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 92/16524 (43) International Publication Date: 1 October 1992 (01.10.92)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/US92/02271 (22) International Filing Date: 19 March 1992 (19.03.92) (30) Priority data: 673,695 20 March 1991 (20.03.91) US 839,742 28 February 1992 (28.02.92) US (71) Applicant: MERCK & CO., INC. [US/US]; 126 E. Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). (72) Inventors: FISHER, Michael, H. ; RD. 1, Old York Road, Box 302, Ringoes, NJ 08551 (US). WYVRATT, Matthew, J. ; 1130 Puddingstone Road, Mountainside, NJ 07092 (US). SCHOEN, William, R. ; 6 Maryellen Drive, Edison, NJ 08820 (US). DeVITA, Robert, J. ; 1490 Lamberts Mill Road, Westfield, NJ 07090 (US).		(74) Agent: ROSE, David, L.; 126 E. Lincoln Avenue, Rahway, NJ 07065 (US). (81) Designated States: BB, BG, BR, LK, MG, MN, MW, PL, RO, RU, SD. Published <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>
(54) Title: BENZO-FUSED LACTAMS PROMOTE RELEASE OF GROWTH HORMONE (57) Abstract There are disclosed certain novel compounds identified as benzo-fused lactams which promote the release of growth hormone in humans and animals. This property can be utilized to promote the growth of food animals to render the production of edible meat products more efficient, and in humans, to increase the stature of those afflicted with a lack of a normal secretion of natural growth hormone. Growth promoting compositions containing such benzo-fused lactams as the active ingredient thereof are also disclosed.		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	FI	Finland	MI	Mali
AU	Australia	FR	France	MN	Mongolia
BB	Barbados	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BE	Belgium	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BF	Burkina Faso	GN	Guinea	NL	Netherlands
BG	Bulgaria	GR	Greece	NO	Norway
BJ	Benin	HU	Hungary	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	IE	Ireland	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KR	Republic of Korea	SN	Senegal
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SU	Soviet Union
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LU	Luxembourg	TG	Togo
DE	Germany	MC	Monaco	US	United States of America
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar		
ES	Spain				

5

- 1 -

TITLE OF THE INVENTION

BENZO-FUSED LACTAMS PROMOTE RELEASE OF GROWTH HORMONE

10

CROSS REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application is a continuation-in-part of our copending application serial number 673695, filed 20 March 1991.

15

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Growth hormone, which is secreted from the pituitary, stimulates growth of all tissues of the body that are capable of growing. In addition, growth hormone is known to have the following basic effects on the metabolic process of the body:

20

1. Increased rate of protein synthesis in all cells of the body;

2. Decreased rate of carbohydrate utilization in cells of the body;

25

3. Increased mobilization of free fatty acids and use of fatty acids for energy.

A deficiency in growth hormone secretion can result in various medical disorders, such as dwarfism.

30

- 2 -

Various ways are known to release growth hormone. For example, chemicals such as arginine, L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine (L-DOPA), glucagon, vasopressin, and insulin induced hypoglycemia, as well as activities such as sleep and exercise, indirectly cause growth hormone to be released from the pituitary by acting in some fashion on the hypothalamus perhaps either to decrease somatostatin secretion or to increase the secretion of the known secretagogue growth hormone releasing factor (GRF) or an unknown endogenous growth hormone-releasing hormone or all of these.

In cases where increased levels of growth hormone were desired, the problem was generally solved by providing exogenous growth hormone or by administering an agent which stimulated growth hormone production and/or release. In either case the peptidyl nature of the compound necessitated that it be administered by injection. Initially the source of growth hormone was the extraction of the pituitary glands of cadavers. This resulted in a very expensive product and carried with it the risk that a disease associated with the source of the pituitary gland could be transmitted to the recipient of the growth hormone. Recently, recombinant growth hormone has become available which, while no longer carrying any risk of disease transmission, is still a very expensive product which must be given by injection or by a nasal spray.

Other compounds have been developed which stimulate the release of endogenous growth hormone

- 3 -

such as analogous peptidyl compounds related to GRF or the peptides of U.S. Patent 4,411,890. These peptides, while considerably smaller than growth hormones are still susceptible to various proteases. As with most peptides, their potential for oral bioavailability is low. The instant compounds are non-peptidyl agents for promoting the release of growth hormone which may be administered parenterally, nasally or by the oral route.

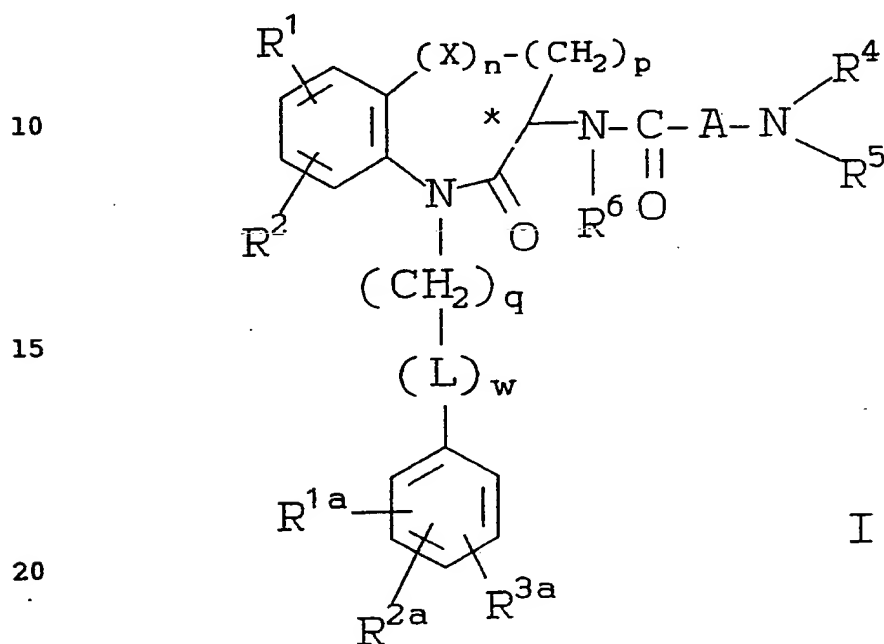
SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The instant invention covers certain benzo-fused lactam compounds which have the ability to stimulate the release of natural or endogenous growth hormone. The compounds thus have the ability to be used to treat conditions which require the stimulation of growth hormone production or secretion such as in humans with a deficiency of natural growth hormone or in animals used for food production where the stimulation of growth hormone will result in a larger, more productive animal. Thus, it is an object of the instant invention to describe the benzo-fused lactam compounds. It is a further object of this invention to describe procedures for the preparation of such compounds. A still further object is to describe the use of such compounds to increase the secretion of growth hormone in humans and animals. A still further object of this invention is to describe compositions containing the benzo-fused lactam compounds for the use of treating humans and animals so as to increase the level of growth hormone secretions. Further objects will become apparent from a reading of the following description.

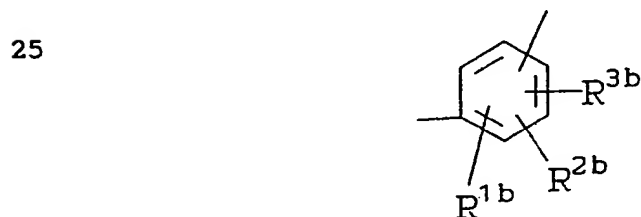
- 4 -

DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The novel benzo-fused lactams of the instant invention are best described in the following structural formula I:



where L is



30

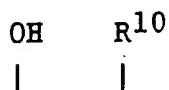
n is 0 or 1;

p is 0 to 3;

q is 0 to 4;

w is 0 or 1;

- 5 -



X is C=O, O, S(O)_m, -CH-, -N-, -CH=CH-;

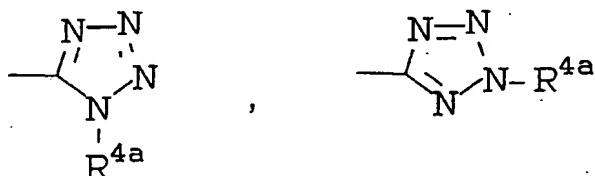
m is 0 to 2;

R¹, R², R^{1a}, R^{2a}, R^{1b}, and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C₁-C₇ alkyl, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkoxy, -S(O)_mR^{7a}, cyano, nitro, R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-, phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or hydroxy;

R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, where the substituents are phenyl or substituted phenyl; phenyl or substituted phenyl where the phenyl substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or hydroxy and v is 0 to 3;

R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R⁹, C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted with R⁹, phenyl substituted with R⁹ or phenoxy substituted with R⁹;

R⁹ is



R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}O(CH₂)_vCO-, R⁴R⁵N(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NCO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NCS(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NN(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NN(R⁵)CS(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)N(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)N(R⁵)CS(CH₂)_v-, R⁴N(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v- or R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v-;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

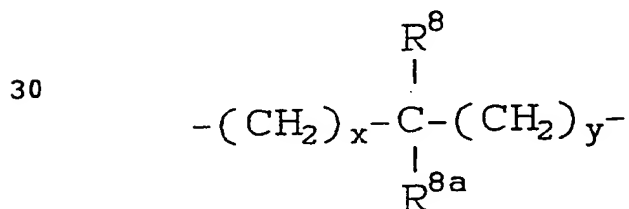
- 6 -

and v is as defined above;

5 R^4 , R^{4a} , R^5 are independently hydrogen, phenyl, substituted phenyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, C_3 - C_{10} alkenyl, substituted C_3 - C_{10} alkenyl, C_3 - C_{10} alkynyl, or substituted C_3 - C_{10} alkynyl where the substituents on the phenyl, alkyl, alkenyl or
 10 alkynyl are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, C_3 - C_7 cycloalkyl, phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, fluoro, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,
 15 C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, formyl, or $-NR^{10}R^{11}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, phenyl, phenyl C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_1 - C_5 -alkoxycarbonyl, or C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyl- C_1 - C_6 alkyl; or R^4 and R^5 can be taken together to
 20 form $-(CH_2)_rB(CH_2)_s-$ where B is CH_2 , O or $S(O)_m$ or $N-R^{10}$, r and s are independently 1 to 3 and R^{10} is as defined above;

25 R^6 is hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, phenyl or phenyl C_1 - C_{10} alkyl;

A is



- 7 -

where x and y are independently 0-3;

R^8 and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, trifluoromethyl, phenyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl

5 where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro, $S(O)_m R^{7a}$, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, C_3 - C_7 cycloalkyl, phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2

10 independently disubstituted phenyl, C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy, formyl, or $-NR^{10}R^{11}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are as defined above; or R^8 and R^{8a} can be taken together to form $-(CH_2)_t$ -where t is 2 to 6; and R^8 and R^{8a} can
15 independently be joined to one or both of R^4 and R^5 to form alkyl bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

20 In the above structural formula and throughout the instant specification, the following terms have the indicated meanings:

The alkyl groups specified above are intended to include those alkyl groups of the
25 designated length in either a straight or branched configuration. Exemplary of such alkyl groups are methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, sec-butyl, tertiary butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, hexyl, isohexyl, and the like.

30 The alkoxy groups specified above are intended to include those alkoxy groups of the designated length in either a straight or branched configuration. Exemplary of such alkoxy groups are methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy,

- 8 -

isobutoxy, tertiary butoxy, pentoxy, isopentoxy, hexoxy, isohexoxy and the like.

The term "halogen" is intended to include the halogen atom fluorine, chlorine, bromine and iodine.

Certain of the above defined terms may occur more than once in the above formula and upon such occurrence each term shall be defined independently of the other.

Preferred compounds of the instant invention are realized when in the above structural formula:

n is 0 or 1;
p is 0 to 3;
q is 0 to 2;
w is 0 or 1;

$$R^{10}$$

$$|$$

X is O, S(O)_m, -N-, -CH=CH-;

m is 0 to 2;

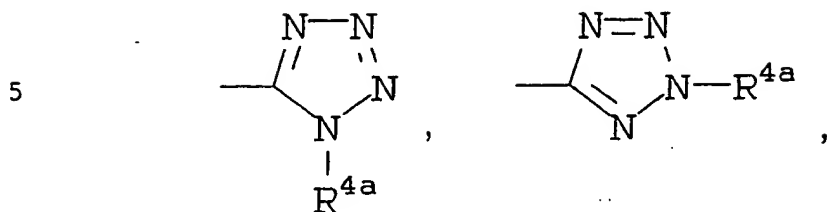
R¹, R², R^{1a}, R^{2a}, R^{1b}, and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C₁-C₇ alkyl, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, -S(O)_mR^{7a}, R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-, phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or hydroxy;

R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, where the substituents are phenyl; phenyl and v is 0 to 2;

R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R⁹, C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted with R⁹, phenyl substituted with R⁹ or phenoxy substituted with R⁹;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 9 -

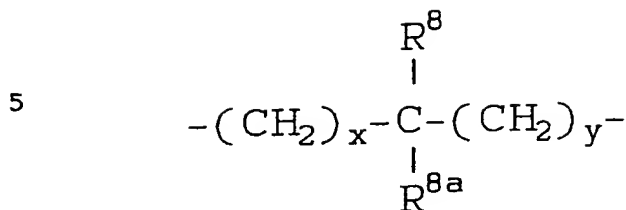
R⁹ is

10 R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-,
 R^{7b}CO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵N(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)(CH₂)_v-,
 R⁴R⁵NCO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NCS(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NN(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-,
 R^{7b}CON(R⁴)N(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴N(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v- or
 15 R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v-; where v is as defined above;
 R⁴, R^{4a}, R⁵ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl,
 substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, where the substituents on
 the alkyl are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkoxy,
 C₃-C₇ cycloalkyl, phenyl C₁-C₃ alkoxy, fluoro, R¹
 20 substituted or R¹, R² independently disubstituted
 phenyl C₁-C₃ alkoxy, phenyl, R¹ substituted or R¹, R²
 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the
 substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,
 C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy or
 formyl;
 25 R⁴ and R⁵ can be taken together to form
 -(CH₂)_rB(CH₂)_s- where B is CH₂, O or S(O)_m or N-R¹⁰
 r and s are independently 1 to 3 and R¹⁰ is as
 defined above;

30 R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl or phenyl C₁-C₁₀ alkyl;

A is

- 10 -



10

where x and y are independently 0-2;

R^8 and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro, $\text{S}(\text{O})_m\text{R}^{7a}$, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl, C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxycarbonyl, carboxy, formyl, $-\text{NR}^{10}\text{R}^{11}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, or C_1 - C_5 alkanoyl- C_1 - C_6 alkyl; or R^8 and R^{8a} can be taken together to form $-(\text{CH}_2)_t$ -where t is 2 to 4; and R^8 and R^{8a} can independently be joined to one or both of R^4 and R^5 to form alkyl bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

25

Additional preferred compounds are realized in the above structural formula when:

30 n is 0 or 1;
p is 0 to 2;
q is 0 to 2;
w is 0 or 1;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

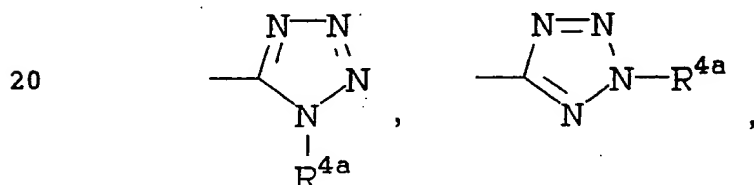
- 11 -

X is $S(O)_m$, $-CH=CH-$;

m is 0 or 1;

- R^1 , R^2 , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{1b} , and R^{2b} are independently
 5 hydrogen, halogen, C_1 - C_7 alkyl, C_1 - C_3 perfluoroalkyl,
 $-S(O)_m R^{7a}$, $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v$,
 phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents
 are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_1 - C_6
 alkoxy, or hydroxy;
 10 R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl, where the substituents are
 phenyl and v is 0 to 2;
 R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R^9 , C_1 - C_6
 alkyl substituted with R^9 , phenyl substituted with R^9
 15 or phenoxy substituted with R^9 ;

R^9 is



25

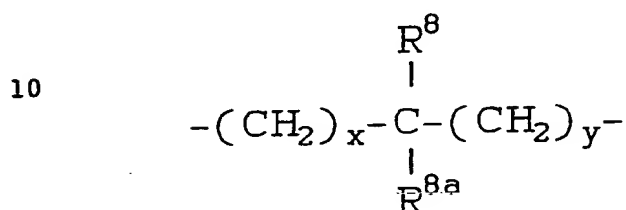
- $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^{7b}CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5N(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CON(R^4)(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5NCS(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4N(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$ or
 $R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$; where v is as defined above;
 30 R^4 , R^{4a} , R^5 are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, where the substituents on
 the alkyl are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy,
 fluoro, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2
 independently disubstituted phenyl, where

- 12 -

the substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,
C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy;

5 R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl;

A is



15 where x and y are independently 0-2;
R⁸ and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl,
substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl where the substituents are
from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro,
S(O)_mR^{7a}, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, phenyl, R¹ substituted or R¹,
20 R² independently disubstituted phenyl,
C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy; or
R⁸ and R^{8a} can be taken together to form -(CH₂)_t-
where t is 2; and R⁸ and R^{8a} can independently be
joined to one or both of R⁴ and R⁵ to form alkyl
bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl
25 portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains
from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

30 Still further preferred compounds of the
instant invention are realized in the above
structural formula when;

n is 0 or 1;

p is 0 to 2;

- 13 -

q is 1;

w is 1;

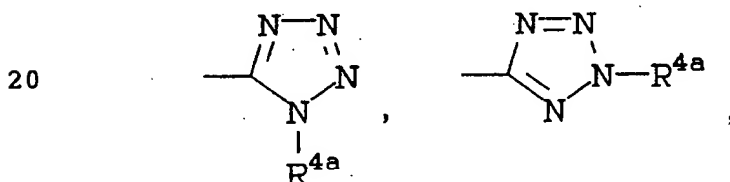
X is $S(O)_m$, $-CH=CH-$;

5 m is 0 or 1;

R^1 , R^2 , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{1b} , and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C_1-C_7 alkyl, C_1-C_3 perfluoroalkyl, $-S(O)_mR^{7a}$, $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, C_1-C_6 alkoxy, or hydroxy;

R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, where the substituents are phenyl, phenyl and v is 0 or 1;

15 R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen or R^9 ;

 R^9 is

25 $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5N(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CON(R^4)(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v-$ or $R^4N(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$; where v is as defined above;

R^4 , R^5 are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_{10} alkyl, substituted C_1-C_{10} alkyl, where the substituents on the alkyl are from 1 to 3 of hydroxy, C_1-C_3 alkoxy, fluoro, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the substituents on the phenyl are as defined above;

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 14 -

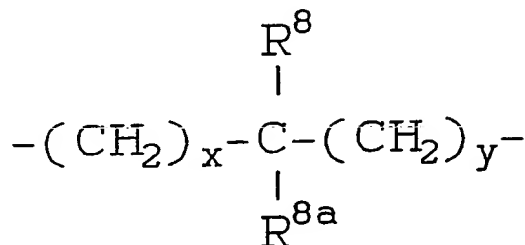
R^{4a} is hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl where the substituents on the alkyl are from 1 to 3 of hydroxy;

5

R⁶ is hydrogen;

A is

10



15

where x and y are independently 0-1;

20

R⁸ and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro, S(O)_mR^{7a}, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, phenyl, R¹ substituted or R¹, R² independently disubstituted phenyl,

25

C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy; or R⁸ and R^{8a} can be taken together to form -(CH₂)_t- where t is 2; and R⁸ and R^{8a} can independently be joined to one or both of R⁴ and R⁵ to form alkyl bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;

30

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 15 -

Representative preferred growth hormone releasing compounds of the present invention include the following:

5

1. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

10

2. 2(R)-amino-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

15

3. 2(R)-amino-3-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

20

4. 2(R)-amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

25

5. 3-(2-hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetra-
zol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-
azepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

30

6. 3-(2-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 16 -

7. 2-amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide
- 5 8. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 10 9. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
- 15 10. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 20 11. 3-benzylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 25 12. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
- 30 13. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide

- 17 -

14. 3-(2(S)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
5
15. 3-(2(R),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
10
16. 3-(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
15
17. 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
20
18. 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
25
19. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 18 -

20. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-hydroxy-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide
21. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide
22. 2-(3(R)-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
propanamide
23. 2-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
propanamide
24. 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
25. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 19 -

26. 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
5 yl]butanamide
27. Quinuclidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-3-carboxamide
10
28. 3-(2-fluoropropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
15
29. 3-(2-methoxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
20
30. 3-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,-
3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]butanamide
25
31. 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,-
3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
32. 4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-
methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
30 carboxamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 20 -

- 5 33. 4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 10 34. N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 15 35. N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 20 36. N-methyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 25 37. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 30 38. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
39. 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-aminomethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

- 21 -

- 5 40. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-aminomethyl[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
- 10 41. 4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3(S),4-trihydroxybutyl)-
amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-
biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 15 42. 4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(3-hydroxybutyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-
oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-ben-
zazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 20 43. 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3-dihydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 25 44. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3-di-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
- 30 45. N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-
amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3-dihydro-2-
oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-
2-carboxamide
46. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-di-
hydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-
yl]-butanamide

- 22 -

- 5 47. 3-(2(S)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
- 10 48. N-ethyl-4'-[[3(S)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-5(2H)-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 15 49. 4'-[[3(S)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-5(2H)-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
50. 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide
- 20 51. N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 25 52. N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 30 53. N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 23 -

54. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
5
55. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
10
56. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
15
57. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
20
58. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
25
59. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
30
60. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(acetylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 24 -

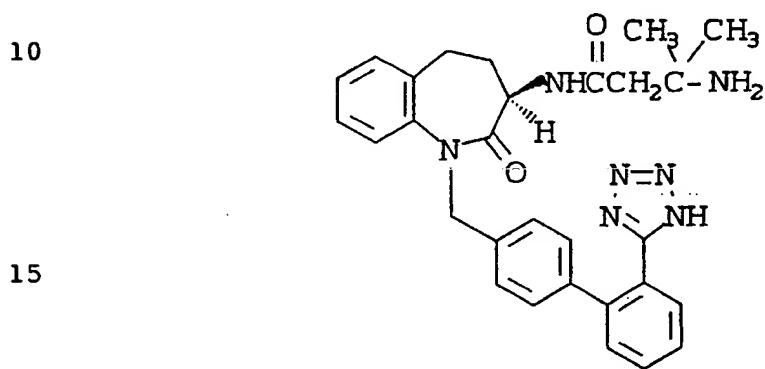
- 5 61. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(acetylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
62. 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(benzoylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 10 63. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(benzoylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 15 64. 3-amino-3-methyl-4-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 20 65. 2-amino-2-methyl-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide
- 25 66. 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-4-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 30 67. 2-(3-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

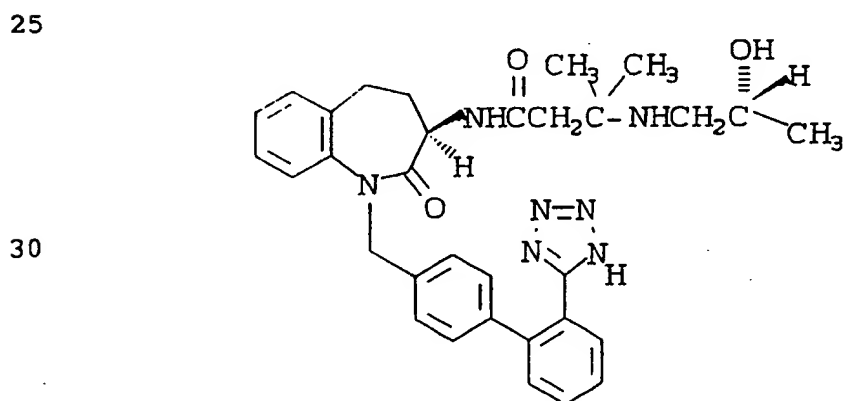
- 25 -

Representative examples of the nomenclature employed are given below:

- 5 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide



- 20 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide



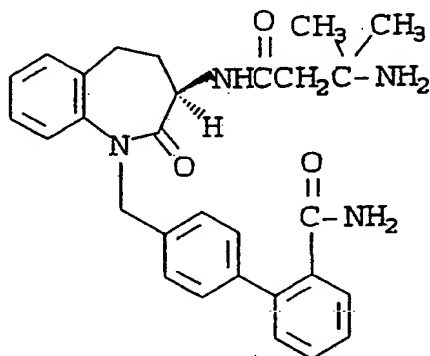
SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 26 -

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

5

10

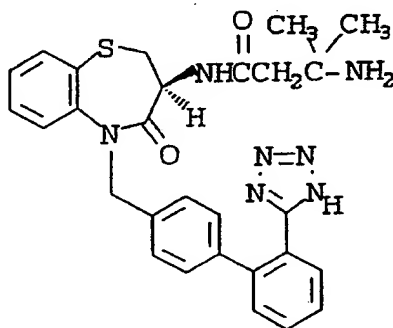


15

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

20

25



The compounds of the instant invention all have at least one asymmetric center as noted by the asterisk in the structural Formula I above.

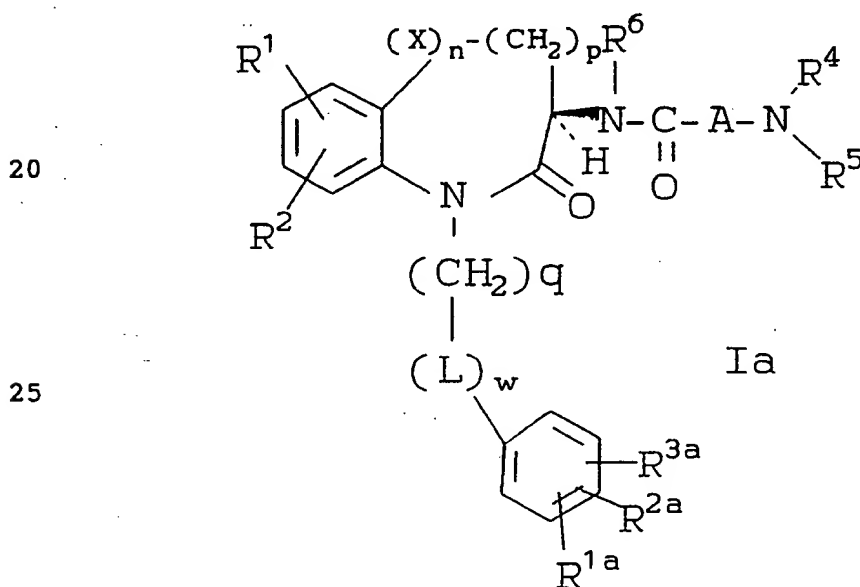
Additional asymmetric centers may be present on the molecule depending upon the nature of the various substituents on the molecule. Each such asymmetric center will produce two optical isomers and it is

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 27 -

intended that all such optical isomers, as separated, pure optical isomers or racemic mixtures thereof, be included within the ambit of the instant invention.

5 In the case of the asymmetric center represented by the asterisk in Formula I, it has been found that the compound in which the 3-amino substituent is above the plane of the structure, as seen in Formula Ia, is more active and thus more preferred over the compound
10 in which the 3-amino substituent is below the plane of the structure. In the substituent $(X)_n$, when $n = 0$, the asymmetric center is designated as the R-isomer. When $n = 1$, this center will be designated according to the R/S rules as either R or S depending
15 upon the value of X.

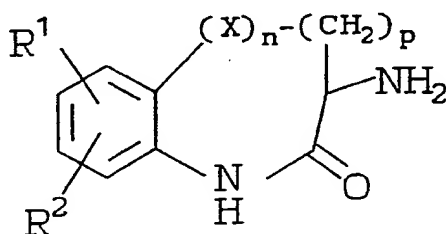


The instant compounds are generally isolated in the form of their pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salts, such as the salts derived from using inorganic and organic acids. Examples of such acids

- 28 -

are hydrochloric, nitric, sulfuric, phosphoric, formic, acetic, trifluoroacetic, propionic, maleic, succinic, malonic and the like. In addition, certain compounds containing an acidic function such as a carboxy or tetrazole, can be isolated in the form of their inorganic salt in which the counterion can be selected from sodium, potassium, lithium, calcium, magnesium and the like, as well as from organic bases.

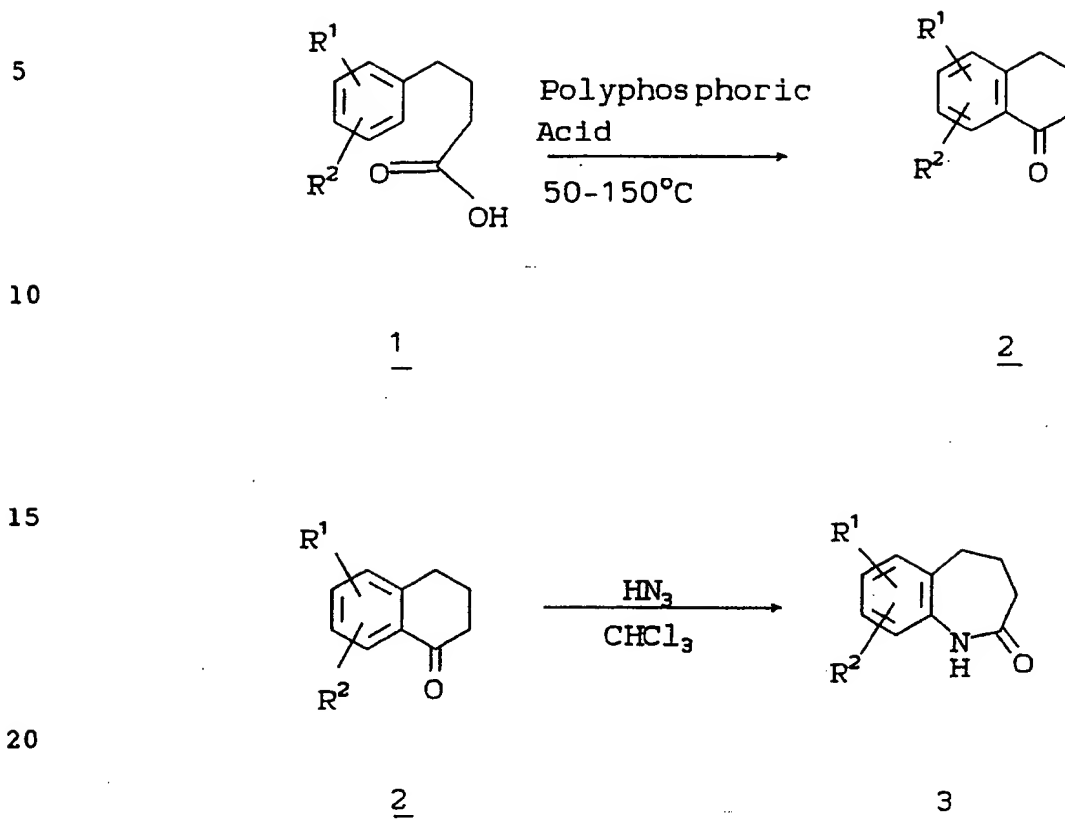
The compounds (I) of the present invention are prepared from aminolactam intermediates such as those of formula II. The preparation of these intermediates is described in the following reaction Schemes.



II

Benzo-fused lactams 3 wherein the lactam is a seven-membered ring are conveniently prepared from substituted tetralones 2 using known procedures. The substituted tetralones are, in some cases, commercially available or are prepared from a suitably substituted derivative of 4-phenylbutyric acid 1. Cyclization of 1 can be achieved by a number of methods well known in the literature including treatment with polyphosphoric acid at elevated temperatures as shown in Scheme 1.

- 29 -

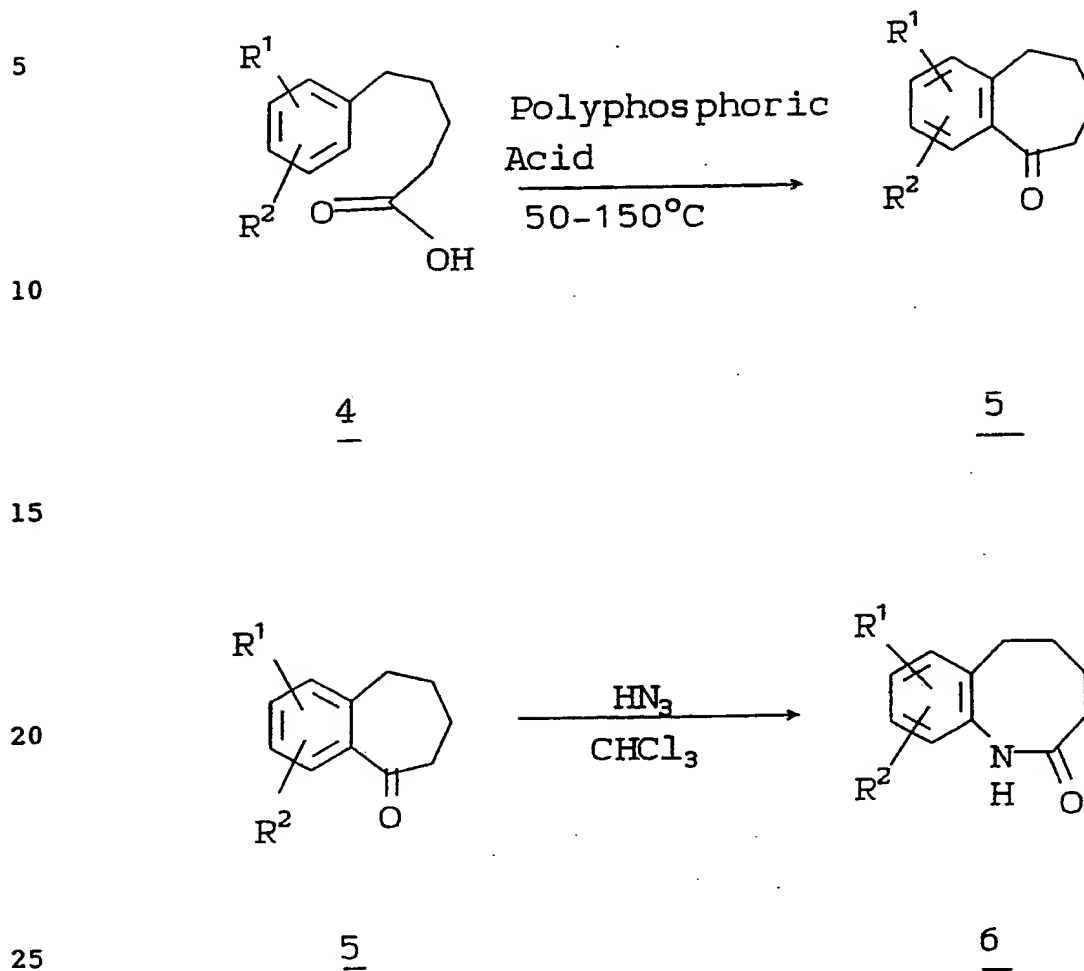
Scheme 1

25 Conversion of substituted tetralones 2 to benzolactams 3 can be achieved by a number of methods familiar to those skilled in the art. A suitable method involves the use of hydrazoic acid (Schmidt reaction) to form the substituted benzolactam 3.

30 Benzo-fused lactams wherein the lactam is an eight-membered ring (6) are prepared as described by D. H. Jones, et al, J. Chem. Soc. C, 2176-2181 (1969) by an analogous series of transformations starting from a substituted derivative of 5-phenylpentanoic acid 4 as shown in Scheme 2.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 30 -

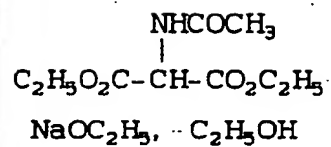
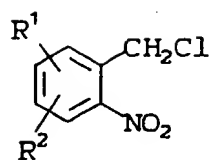
Scheme 2

As shown in Scheme 3, 3-aminobenzolactam
 30 analogs wherein the lactam is a six-membered ring
 (11) are prepared from a substituted derivative of
 2-nitrobenzyl chloride (or bromide) 7 by the method
 of A. L. Davis, et al, Arch. Biochem. Biophys, 102,
 48-51 (1963) and references cited therein.

- 31 -

Scheme 3

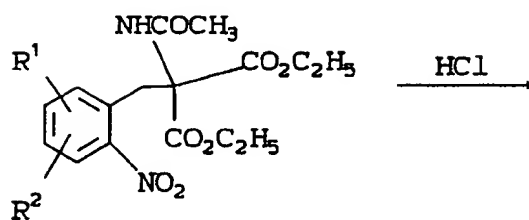
5



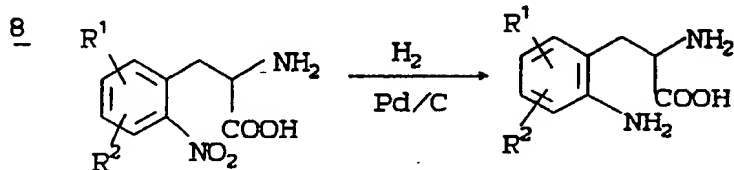
10

7

15

8

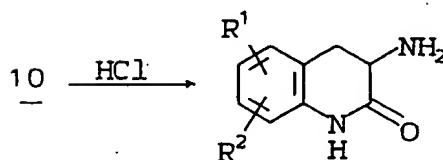
20

9

25

10

30

11

- 32 -

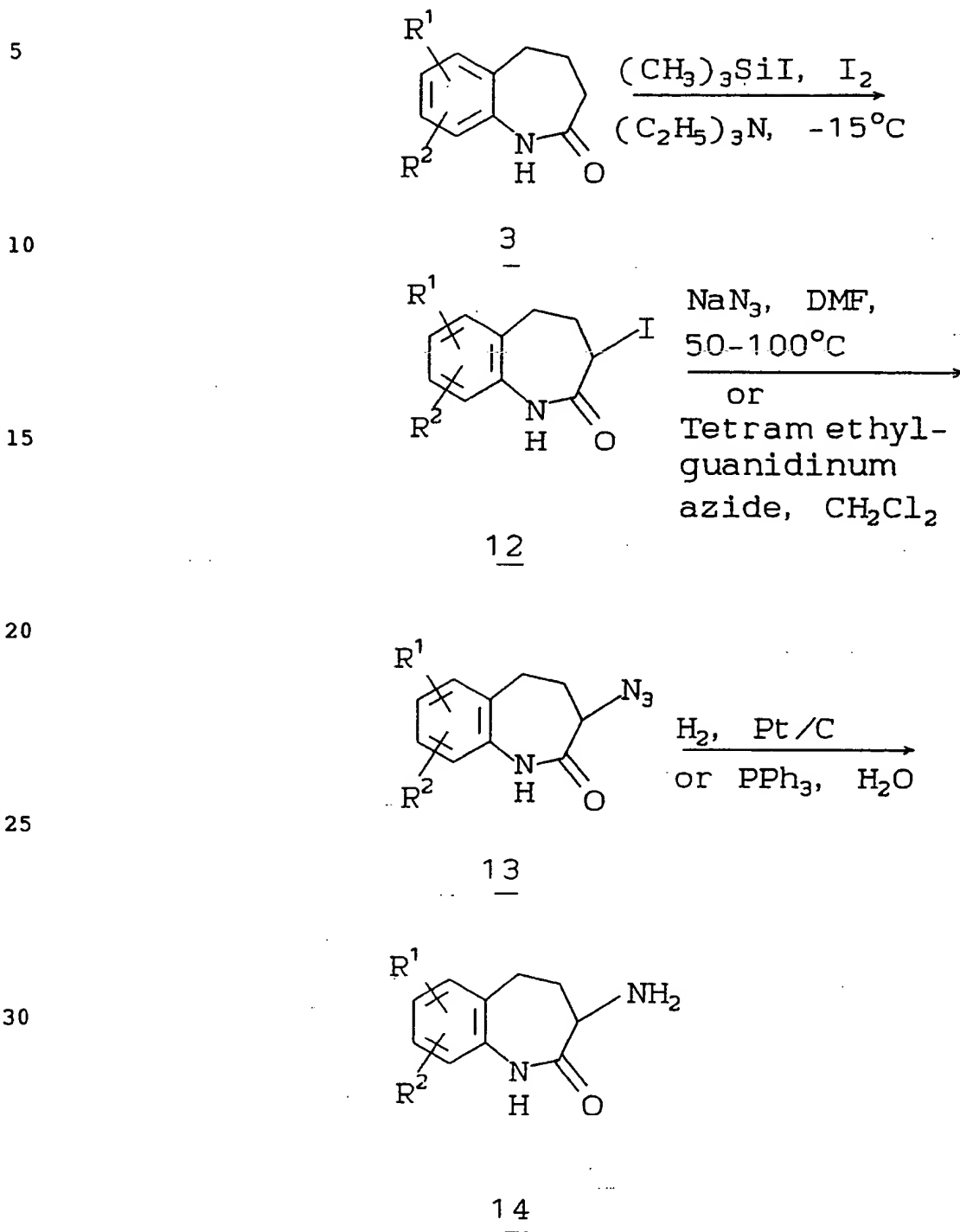
Conversion of substituted benzo-fused
lactams to the requisite 3-amino derivatives can be
achieved by a number of methods familiar to those
5 skilled in the art, including those described by
Wattney, et al, J. Med. Chem., 28, 1511-1516 (1985)
and references cited therein. One common route
proceeds via the intermediacy of a 3-halo (chloro,
bromo or iodo) intermediate which is subsequently
10 displaced by a nitrogen nucleophile, typically
azide. A useful method of forming the
3-iodobenzolactam intermediates 12 involves treating
the benzolactam with two equivalents each of
iodotrimethylsilane and iodine at low temperature, as
15 illustrated in Scheme 4 for the seven-membered ring
analog 3.

20

25

30

- 33 -

Scheme 4

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 34 -

Elaboration of the iodo-benzolactams to the desired aminolactam intermediates II is achieved by a two-step procedure illustrated in Scheme 4.

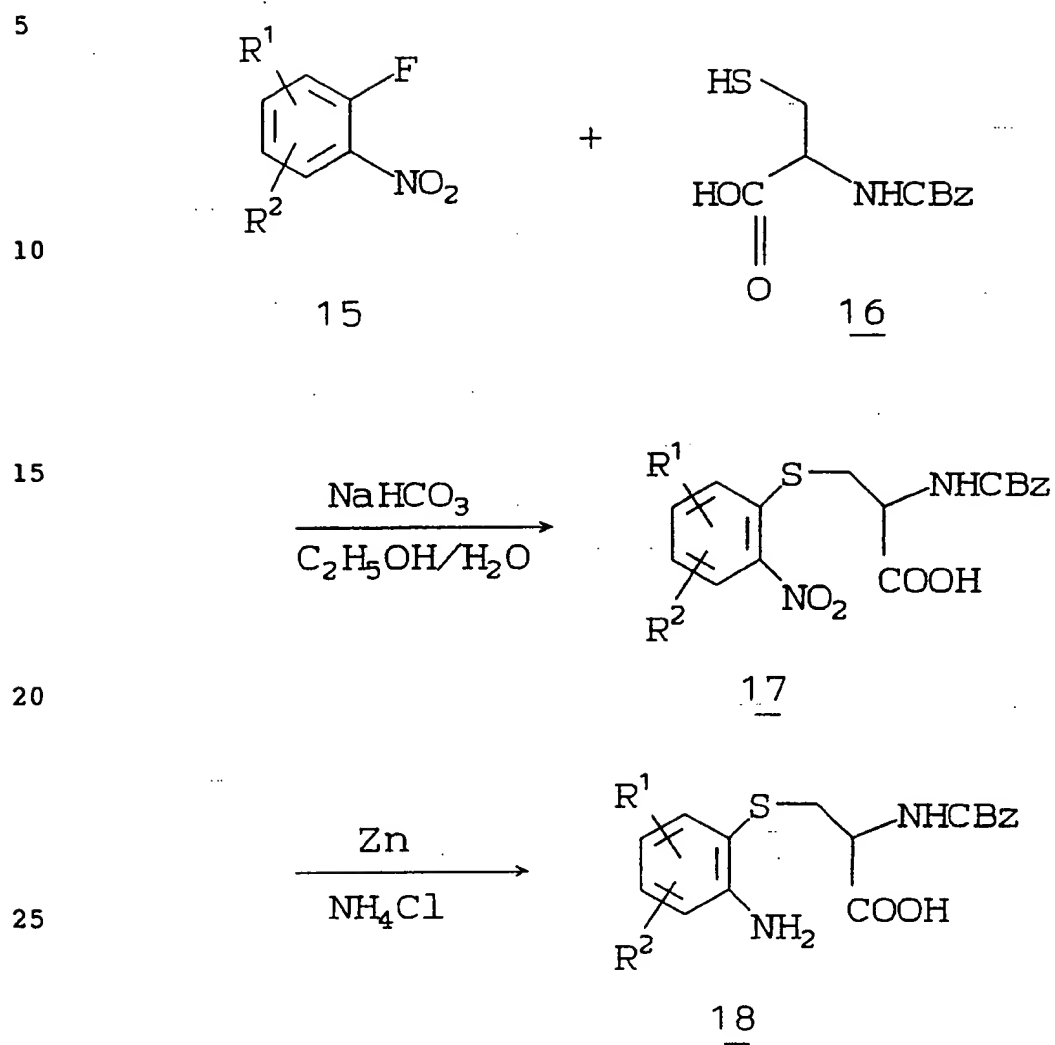
5 Typically, iodo-benzolactams 12 are treated with sodium azide in N,N-dimethylformamide at 50-100°C to give the 3-azido derivatives 13. Alternatively, tetramethylguanidinium azide in a solvent such as methylene chloride can be employed to achieve similar
10 results. Hydrogenation with a metal catalyst, such as platinum on carbon, or alternatively, treatment with triphenylphosphine in wet toluene, results in formation of the amine derivative 14. Formation of the analogous derivatives of the eight-membered
15 benzolactams is also achieved by the routes shown in Scheme 4.

Chiral aminobenzolactams are obtained by resolution of the racemates by classical methods familiar to those skilled in the art. For example,
20 resolution can be achieved by formation of diastereomeric salts of the racemic amines with optically active acids such as D- and L-tartaric acid. Determination of absolute stereochemistry can be achieved in a number of ways including X-ray
25 analysis of a suitable crystalline derivative.

Intermediates of Formula II wherein X is a sulfur atom are prepared by methods described in the literature and known to those skilled in the art. As
30 illustrated in Scheme 5, the seven-membered ring analog 22 is prepared from a protected derivative of cysteine 16 by the method of Slade, et al, J. Med. Chem., 28, 1517-1521 (1985) and references cited therein (Cbz = benzyloxycarbonyl).

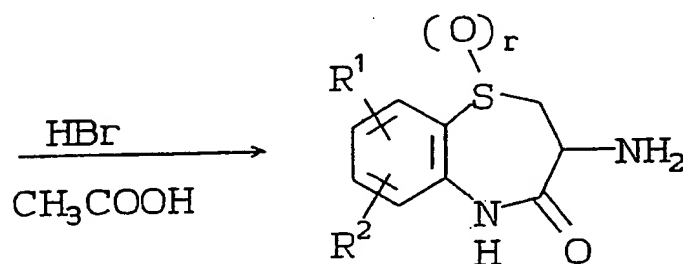
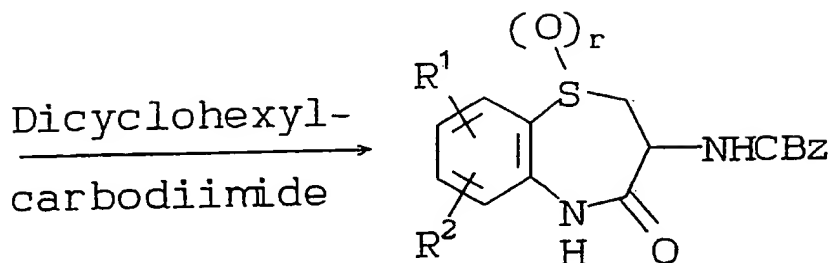
SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 35 -

Scheme 5

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 36 -

Scheme 5 (Con't)

Sulfoxide and sulfone intermediates 23 and 24 are prepared by oxidation of 19 with various oxidants such as sodium periodate or meta-chloro-perbenzoic acid. Eight-membered ring intermediates of Formula II wherein X is sulfur can be prepared by an analogous route starting from derivatives of homo-cysteine.

Intermediates of Formula II wherein X is an oxygen atom are prepared by methods described in the literature and known to those skilled in the art.

- 36/1 -

For example, the seven-membered ring analog 26 can be prepared from a substituted derivative of 3-(2-nitro-phenoxy)butyric acid 25 by the method of J. Ott,
5 Arch. Pharm. (Weinheim, Ger.), 323(9), 601-603 (1990).

10

15

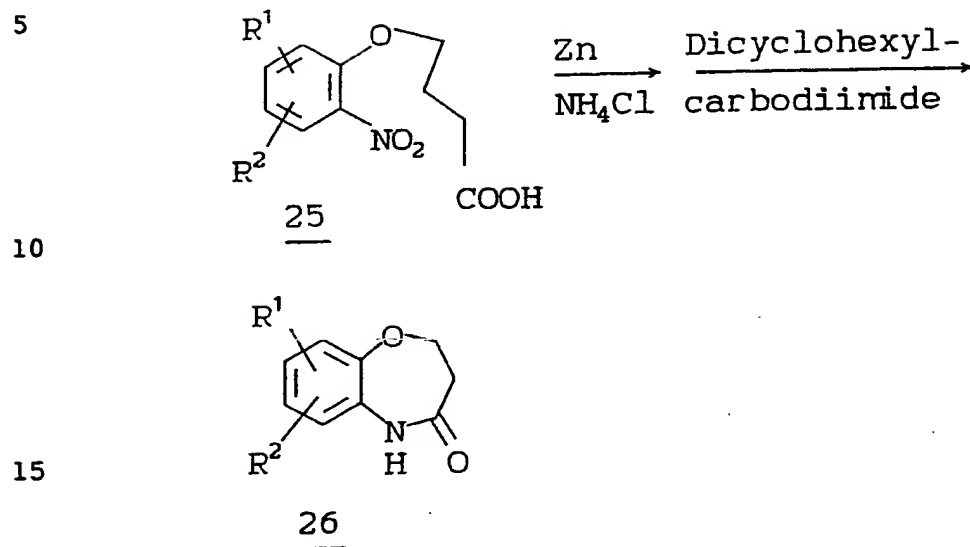
20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 37 -

Scheme 6

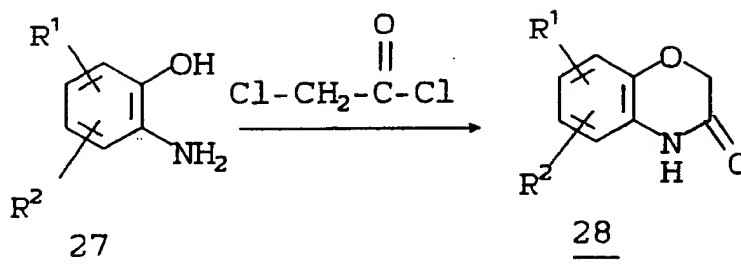
Six-membered ring analogs wherein X is oxygen (28) may be prepared by reaction of a substituted derivative of 2-aminophenol 27 with chloroacetyl chloride by the method of Huang and Chan, Synthesis, 10, 851 (1984) and references cited therein. Subsequent incorporation of an amino group at the 3 position of either 26 or 28 is achieved by the methods described in Scheme 4.

- 38 -

Scheme 7

5

10



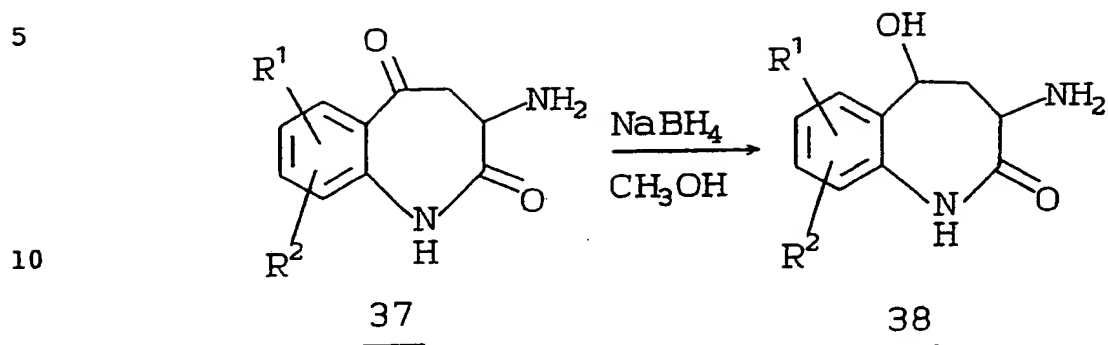
15

Seven-membered ring analogs of Formula II wherein X is C=O can be prepared from derivatives of tryptophan as described in the Australian Journal of Chemistry, 33, 633-640 (1980). Seven-membered ring analogs of Formula II wherein X is CH=CH can be prepared from the aforementioned analogs wherein X is C=O. Treatment of 37 with chemical reducing agents such as sodium borohydride in a polar solvent such as methanol or ethanol results in reduction to give the secondary alcohol derivative 38 (X=CHOH).

25

30

- 39 -

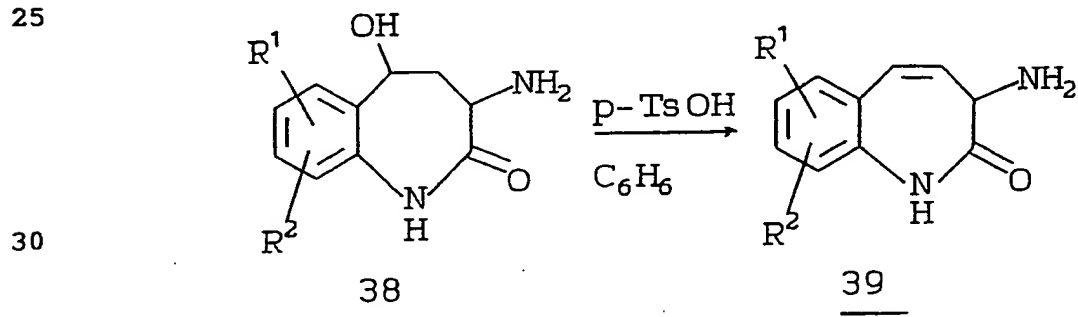


15

Dehydration of 38 can be achieved by several methods described in the literature and familiar to those skilled in the art. For example, treatment of 38 in an inert solvent, such as benzene, with a strong acid such as p-toluenesulfonic acid, will result in dehydration to the unsaturated analog 39.

20

25



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 39/1 -

Intermediates of formula II can be further elaborated to new intermediates (formula III) which are substituted on the amino group (Scheme 8).

5 Reductive alkylation of II with an aldehyde is carried out under conditions known in the art; for example, by catalytic hydrogenation with hydrogen in

10

15

20

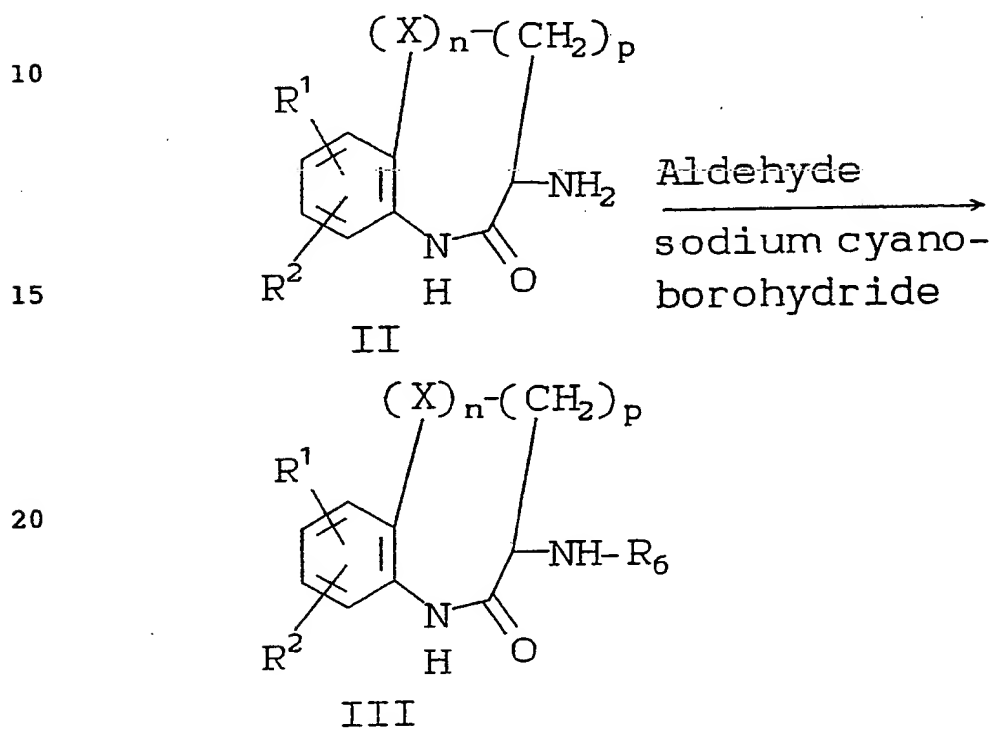
25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 40 -

the presence of platinum, palladium or nickel catalysts or with chemical reducing agents such as sodium cyanoborohydride in an inert solvent such as methanol or ethanol.

Scheme 8

Attachment of the amino acid sidechain to intermediates of formula III is accomplished by the route shown in Scheme 9. Coupling is conveniently carried out by the use of an appropriately protected amino acid derivative, such as that illustrated by formula IV, and a coupling reagent such as

- 40/1 -

5 benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium
hexafluorophosphate ("BOP") in an inert solvent such
as methylene chloride. Separation of unwanted side
products, and purification of intermediates is
achieved by chromatography on silica gel, employing
flash chromatography (W.C. Still, M. Kahn and A.

10

15

20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 41 -

Mitra, J. Org. Chem., 43, 2923 (1978)) or by medium pressure liquid chromatography.

Scheme 9

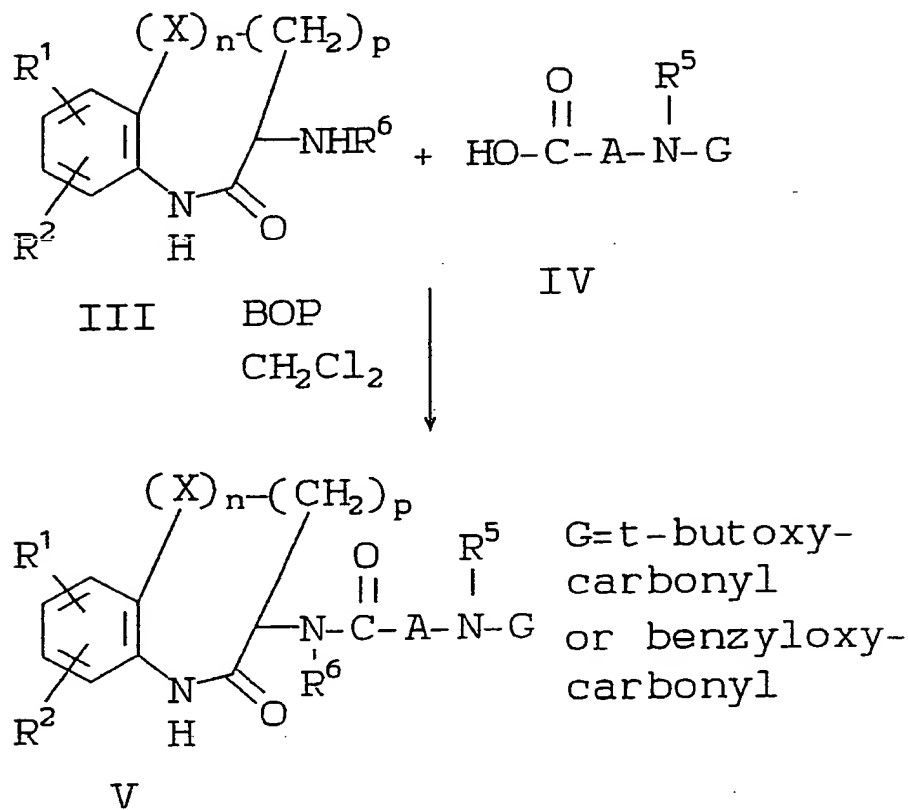
5

10

15

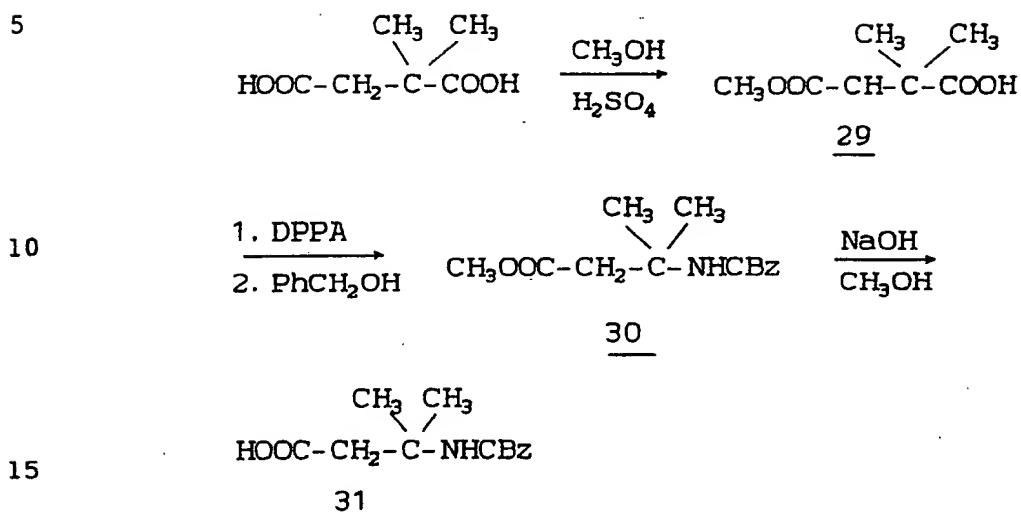
20

25



The protected amino acid derivatives IV are, in many cases, commercially available in t-butoxycarbonyl (BOC) or benzyloxycarbonyl (CBz) forms. A useful method to prepare the preferred sidechain 31 is shown in Scheme 10.

- 42 -

Scheme 10

20 Formation of the monomethyl ester 29 of 2,2-dimethylsuccinic acid is achieved by treatment of a methanolic solution with a catalytic amount of a strong acid, such as sulfuric acid. Treatment of 29 with diphenylphosphoryl azide (DPPA) followed by

25 benzyl alcohol results in formation of the benzyloxycarbonyl (CBz) compound 30. Alkaline hydrolysis with sodium hydroxide in methanol affords the product 31.

30 Intermediates of formula VII can be prepared as shown in Scheme 11 by treatment of the desired lactam intermediate V with an alkylating agent VI, wherein L is a good leaving group such as Cl, Br, I, O-methanesulfonyl or O-(p-toluenesulfonyl). Alkylation of intermediates of formula V is

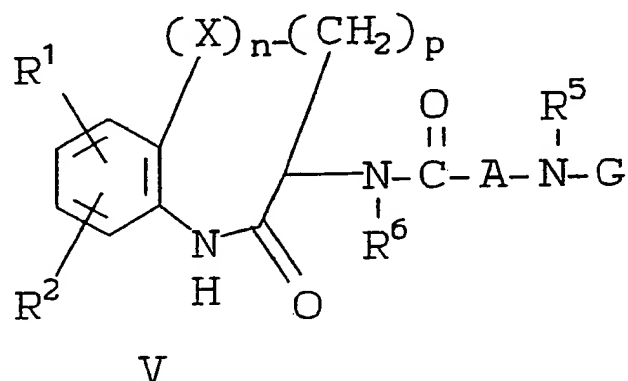
- 43 -

conveniently carried out in anhydrous dimethyl
 formamide (DMF) in the presence of bases such as
 sodium hydride or potassium t-butoxide for a period
 of 0.5 to 24 hours at temperatures of 20-100°C.
 Substituents on the alkylating agent VI may need to
 be protected during alkylation. A description of
 such protecting groups may be found in: Protective
Groups in Organic Synthesis, T.W. Greene, John Wiley
 and Sons, New York, 1981.

Scheme 11

15

20

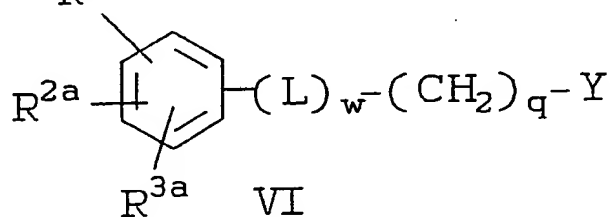


25

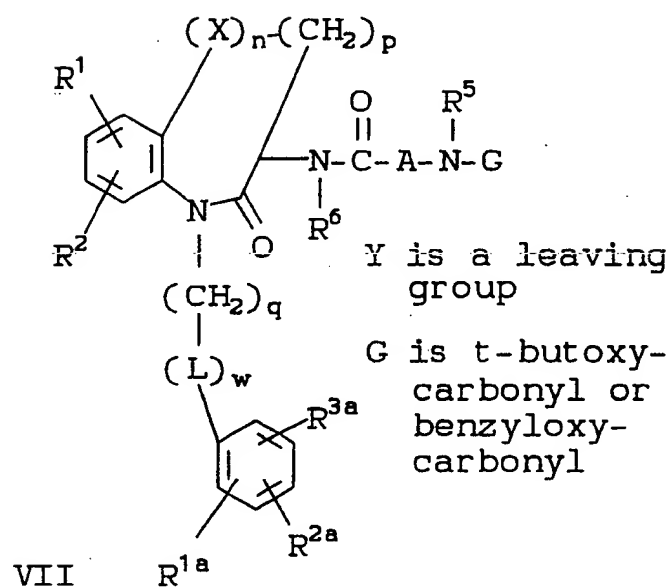
1. NaH/DMF

2. R^{1a}

30



- 43/1 -

Scheme 11 (Cont'd)

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 44 -

Alkylating agents VI are, in some cases commercially available compounds or may be prepared as described in EPO publications 253,310; 291,969; 324,377 and the references cited therein. A useful method to prepare the preferred alkylating agent 36 is shown in reaction Scheme 12, and in U.S. Patent 5,039,814.

10

15

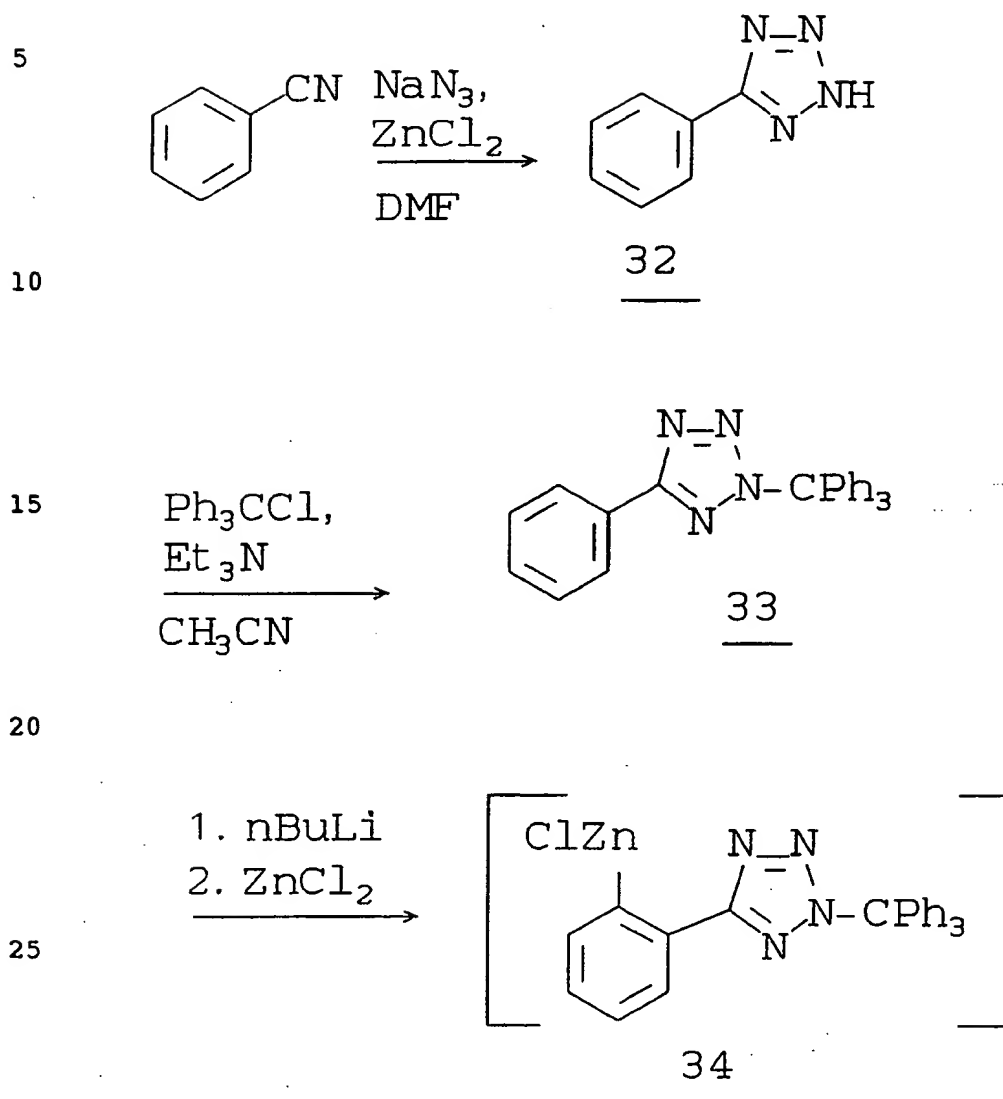
20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 45 -

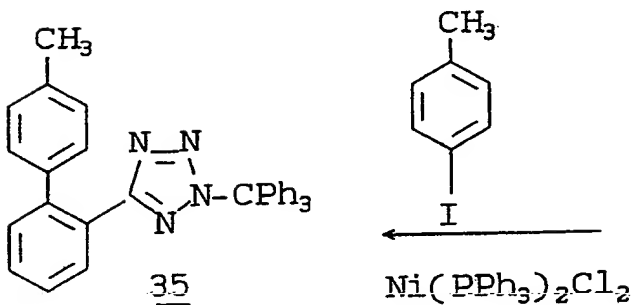
Scheme 12

- 45/1 -

Scheme 12 (Cont'd)

5

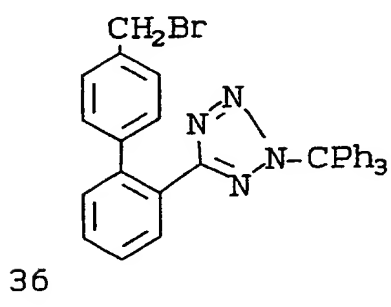
10



15

20

25



30

- 46 -

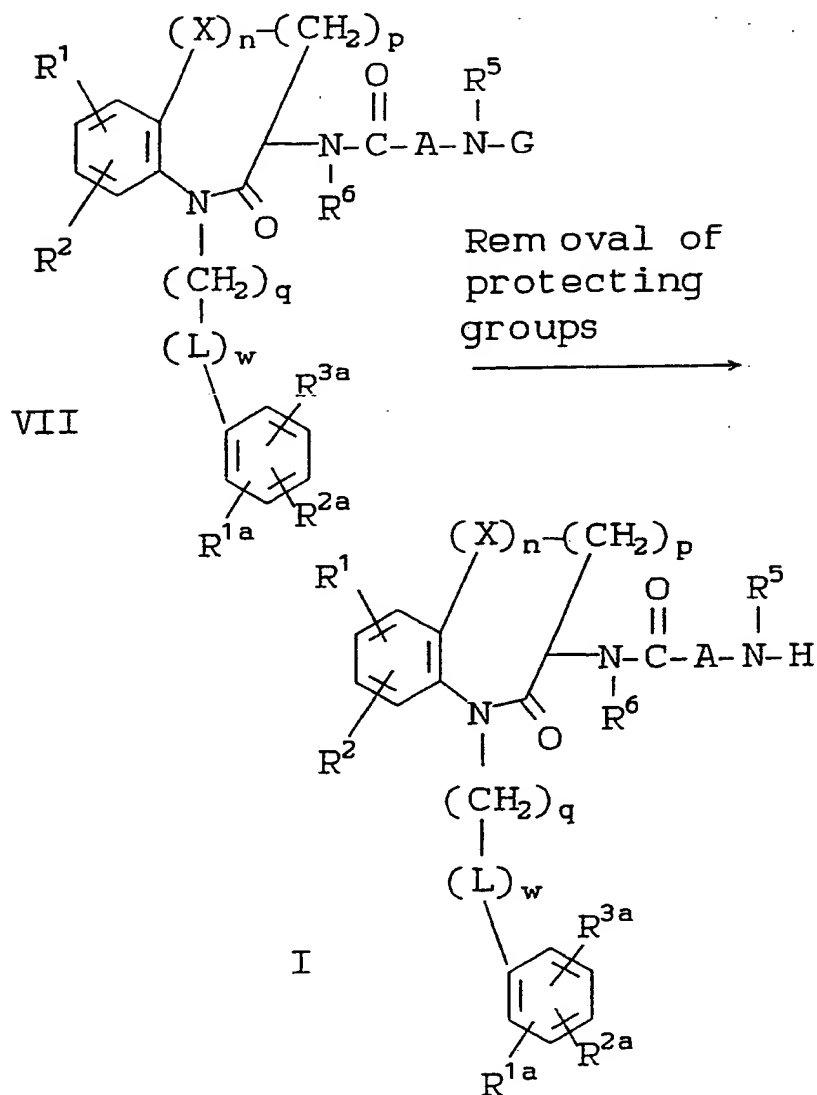
As outlined in Scheme 12, benzonitrile is treated with sodium azide and zinc chloride to give 5-phenyltetrazole 32 which is converted to the N-trityl derivative 33 by treatment with triphenylmethyl chloride and triethylamine. The zinc reagent 34 was prepared by treatment with n-butyl lithium followed by zinc chloride. Coupling with 4-iodotoluene using the catalyst bis(triphenylphosphine)-nickel(II) dichloride gives the biphenyl product 35 in high yield. Reaction with N-bromosuccinimide and AIBN gives bromide 36.

Conversion to the final products of formula I wherein R⁴ is hydrogen, is carried out by simultaneous or sequential removal of all protecting groups from intermediate VII as illustrated in Scheme 13. Removal of benzyloxycarbonyl groups can be achieved by a number of methods known in the art; for example, catalytic hydrogenation with hydrogen in the presence of a platinum or palladium catalyst in a protic solvent such as methanol. In cases where catalytic hydrogenation is contraindicated by the presence of other potentially reactive functionality, removal of benzyloxycarbonyl groups can also be achieved by treatment with a solution of hydrogen bromide in acetic acid. Catalytic hydrogenation is also employed in the removal of N-triphenylmethyl (trityl) protecting groups. Removal of t-butoxycarbonyl (BOC) protecting groups is carried out by treatment of a solution in a solvent such as methylene chloride or methanol, with a strong acid, such as hydrochloric acid or trifluoroacetic acid. Conditions required to remove other protecting groups which may be present can be found in Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 47 -

Scheme 13



Compounds of formula I wherein R^4 and R^5 are each hydrogen can be further elaborated by reductive alkylation with an aldehyde by the aforementioned procedures or by alkylations such as by reaction with various epoxides. The products, obtained as

- 47/1 -

hydrochloride or trifluoroacetate salts, are
conveniently purified by reverse phase high
performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) or by
recrystallization.

5

10

15

20

25

30

- 48 -

Compounds of Formula I wherein R^{3a} or R^{3b} are taken as $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v$ and v is 0 can be prepared by several methods. For example, as shown in Scheme 14, compound 41 wherein R^4 and R^5 are both hydrogen is conveniently prepared by hydrolysis of a nitrile precursor 40.

Scheme 14

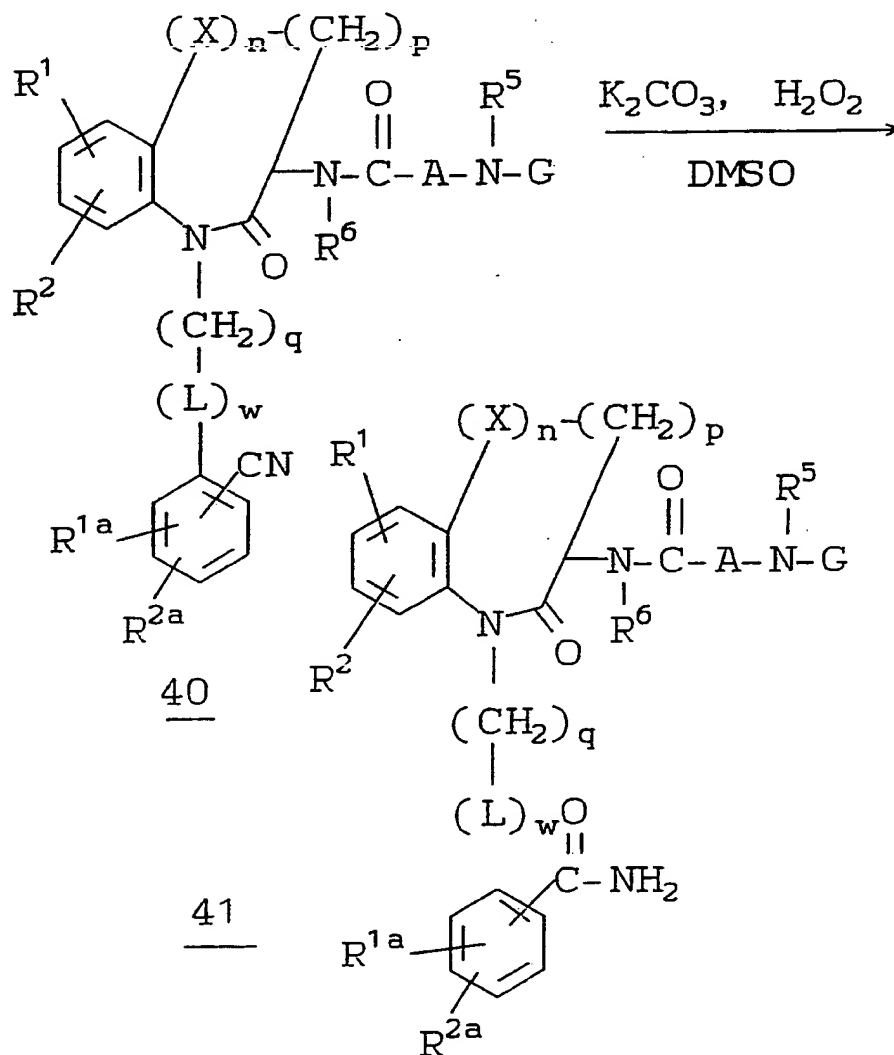
10

15

20

25

30



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 48/1 -

Thus, treatment of the nitrile 40 with
hydrogen peroxide and a strong base, such as
potassium carbonate, in a polar solvent, such as
5 dimethylsulfoxide at temperatures of 25°C to 150°C

10

15

20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 49 -

results in formation of the amide derivative 41. The precursor 40 can be prepared from an appropriate alkylating agent VI, where R^{3a} is cyano, as described in Scheme 11.

A useful method of preparing the alkylating agent 44 is outlined in Scheme 15.

Scheme 15

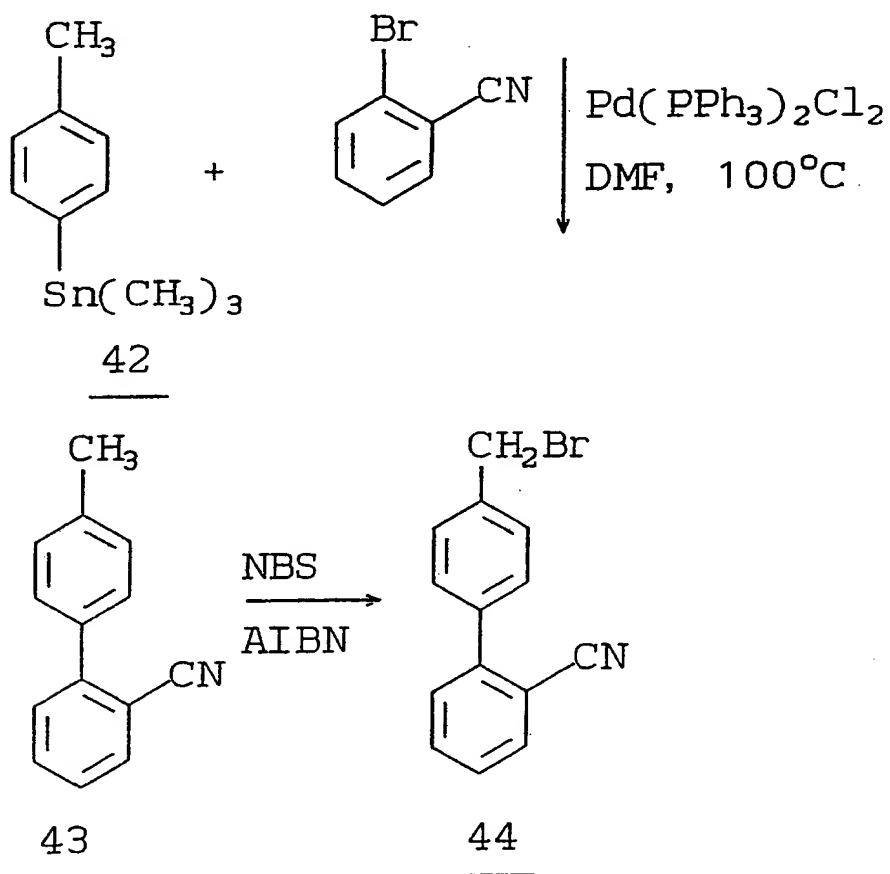
10

15

20

25

30



- 49/1 -

Thus, treatment of 4-(methylphenyl)trimethyl
stannane 42 with 2-bromobenzonitrile in
dimethylformamide at 100°C in the presence of
5 bis-triphenylphosphine palladium (II) chloride
results in coupling to form the biphenyl nitrile 43
in high yield. Conversion to bromide 44 is achieved
by treatment with N-bromosuccinimide and a radical

10

15

20

25

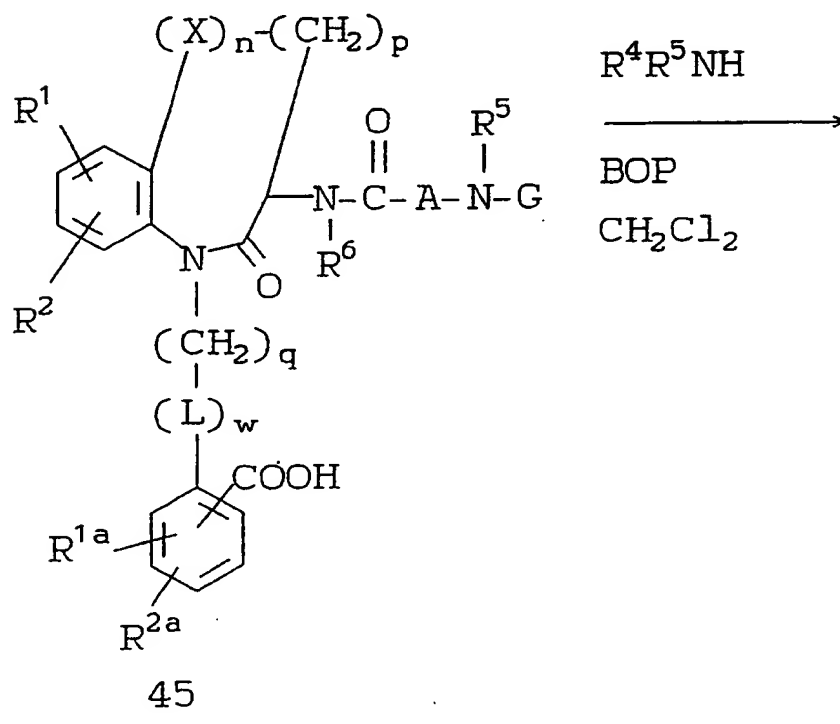
30

- 50 -

initiator, such as azobisisobutyronitrile (AIBN), in refluxing carbon tetrachloride.

Compounds of Formula I wherein R^{3a} or R^{3b} are taken as $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v$ and v is 0 and R^4 and/or R^5 are not hydrogen are prepared from the corresponding carboxylic acid derivatives 45 as shown in Scheme 16.

Scheme 16



- 50/1 -

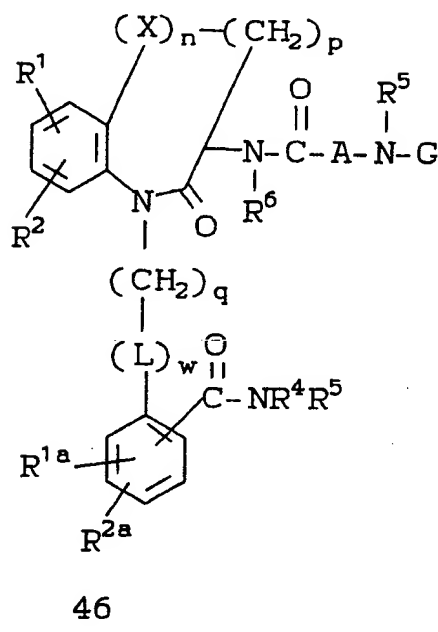
SCHEME 16 (Cont'd)

5

10

15

20



25

30

Coupling of the carboxylic acid derivative 45 with R^4R^5NH is conveniently carried out by the use of a coupling reagent such as benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate ("BOP") in an inert solvent such as methylene chloride. The requisite carboxylic acid precursors can be prepared as illustrated in Scheme 17 for the biphenyl compound 49.

- 51 -

Scheme 17

5

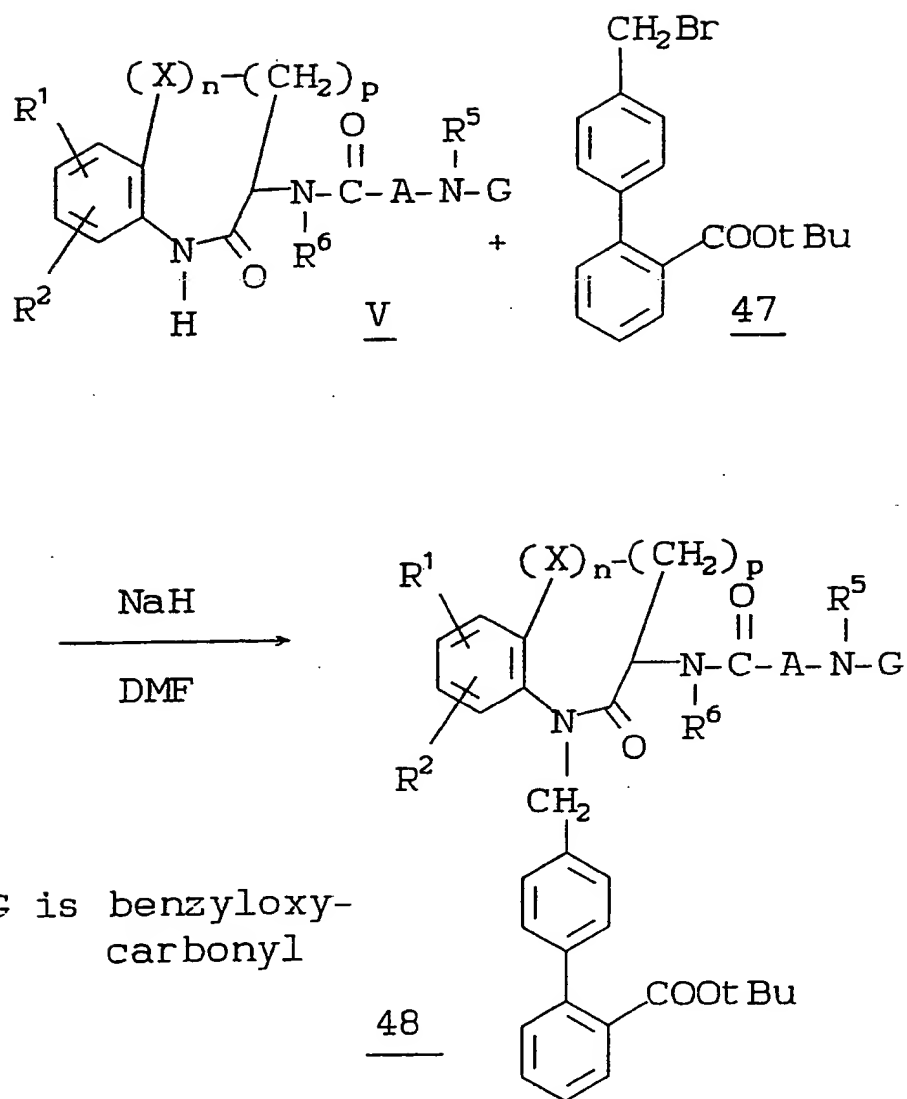
10

15

20

25

30



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 51/1 -

Scheme 17 (Cont'd)

5

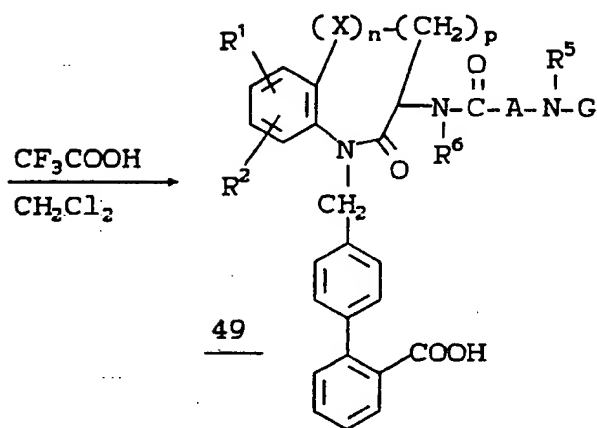
10

15

20

25

30



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 52 -

Alkylation of V with t-butyl 4'-bromomethyl-
biphenyl-2-carboxylate 47 (prepared as described in
EPO Publication 324,377) in the presence of sodium
5 hydride as previously described in Scheme 11 gives
the adduct 48 in high yield. Hydrolysis of the
t-butyl ester is conveniently achieved by treatment
with a strong acid, such as trifluoroacetic, in an
inert solvent such as methylene chloride. It is
10 noted that the protecting group G in this instance
must be inert to strongly acidic conditions, for
example G is benzyloxycarbonyl (CBz). A useful
preparation of the chiral intermediate 54 is shown in
Scheme 18.

15

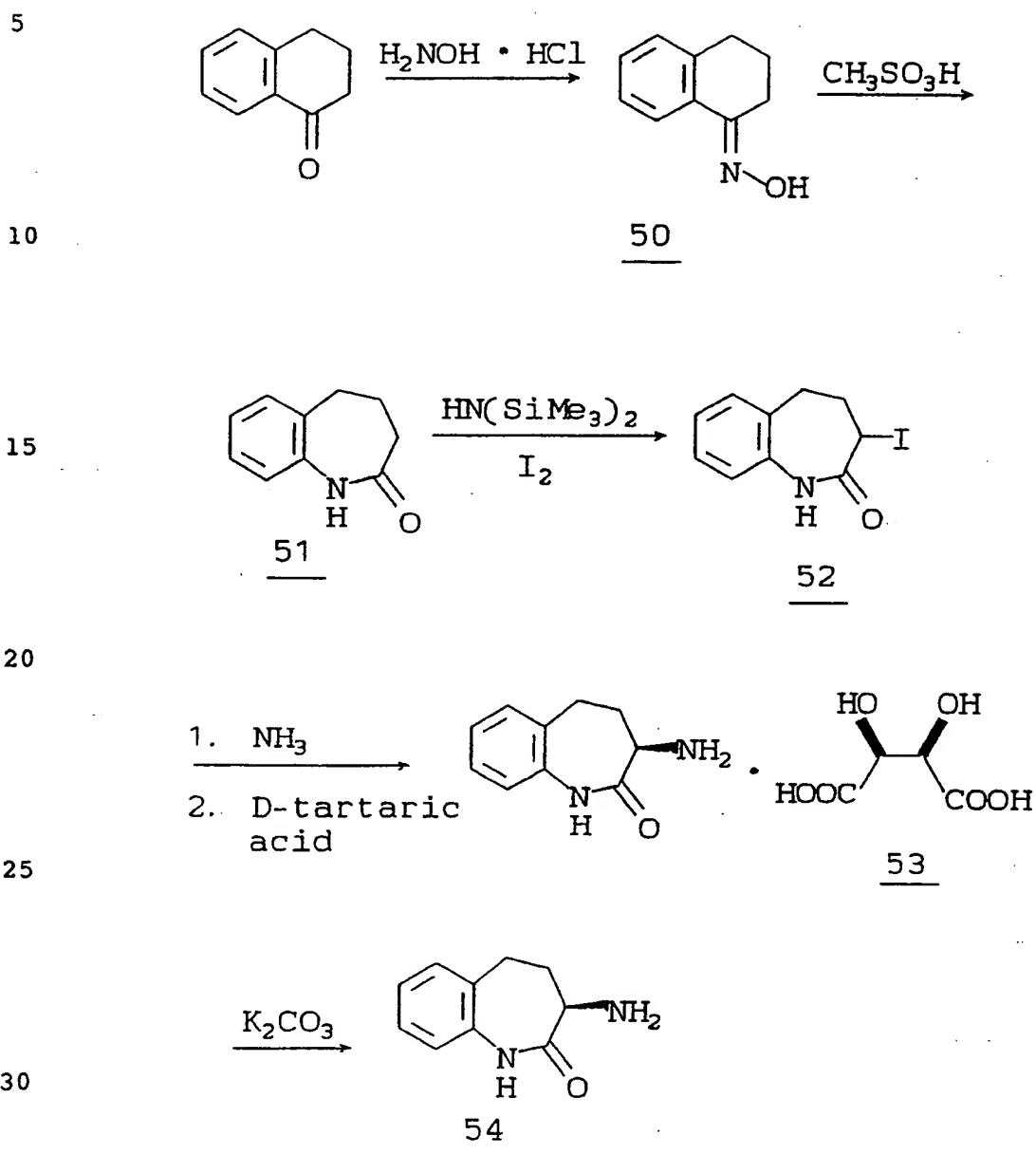
20

25

30

- 53 -

Scheme 18



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 54 -

Conversion of 1-tetralone to the seven-membered benzolactam 51 is achieved by Beckman rearrangement of the intermediate oxime 50.

5 Treatment of 51 with iodine and hexamethyldisilazane gives the 3-iodo derivative 52 which is sequentially treated with ammonia and D-tartaric acid to give the diastereomeric D-tartrate salt 53 after
10 recrystallization. Liberation of the free amine 54 is achieved by neutralization of the D-tartrate salt with potassium carbonate followed by extractive isolation.

An improved route to compounds containing the 3-amino-3-methylbutanamide sidechain is presented
15 in Scheme 19.

20

25

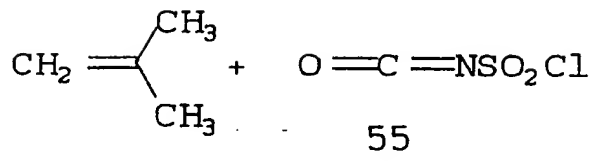
30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

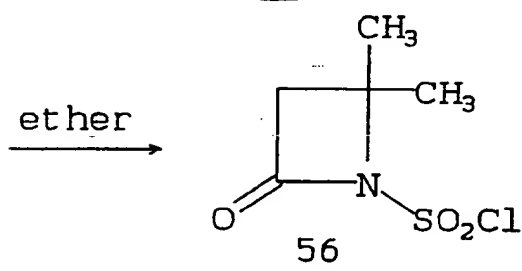
- 55 -

Scheme 19

5

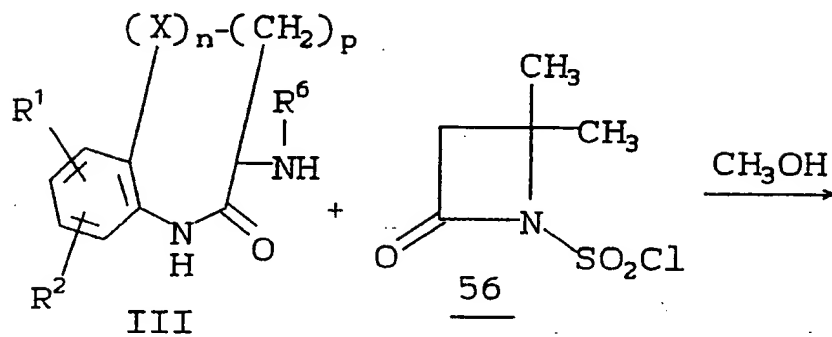


10



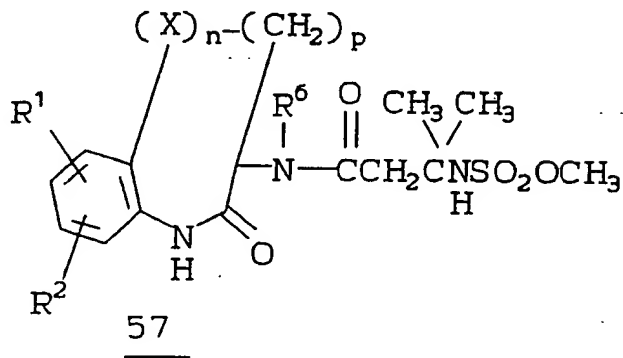
15

20



25

30



- 56 -

Reaction of isobutylene with N-chlorosulfonylisocyanate 55 in ether gives the azetidinone derivative 56. Intermediates of Formula III can then
5 be reacted with 56 to give the 3-methyl-3-amino-butanamide intermediates 57 directly. Removal of the methoxysulfonyl auxilliary is conveniently achieved by treatment with aqueous acid, for example, 6N
10 hydrochloric acid. The methoxysulfonyl group also functions as a protection group G which is inert to the basic conditions employed in the subsequent alkylation step as illustrated in Scheme 11.

An alternate route to the sub-class of compounds of Formula I that can be described by
15 Formula IX is shown in Scheme 20.

20

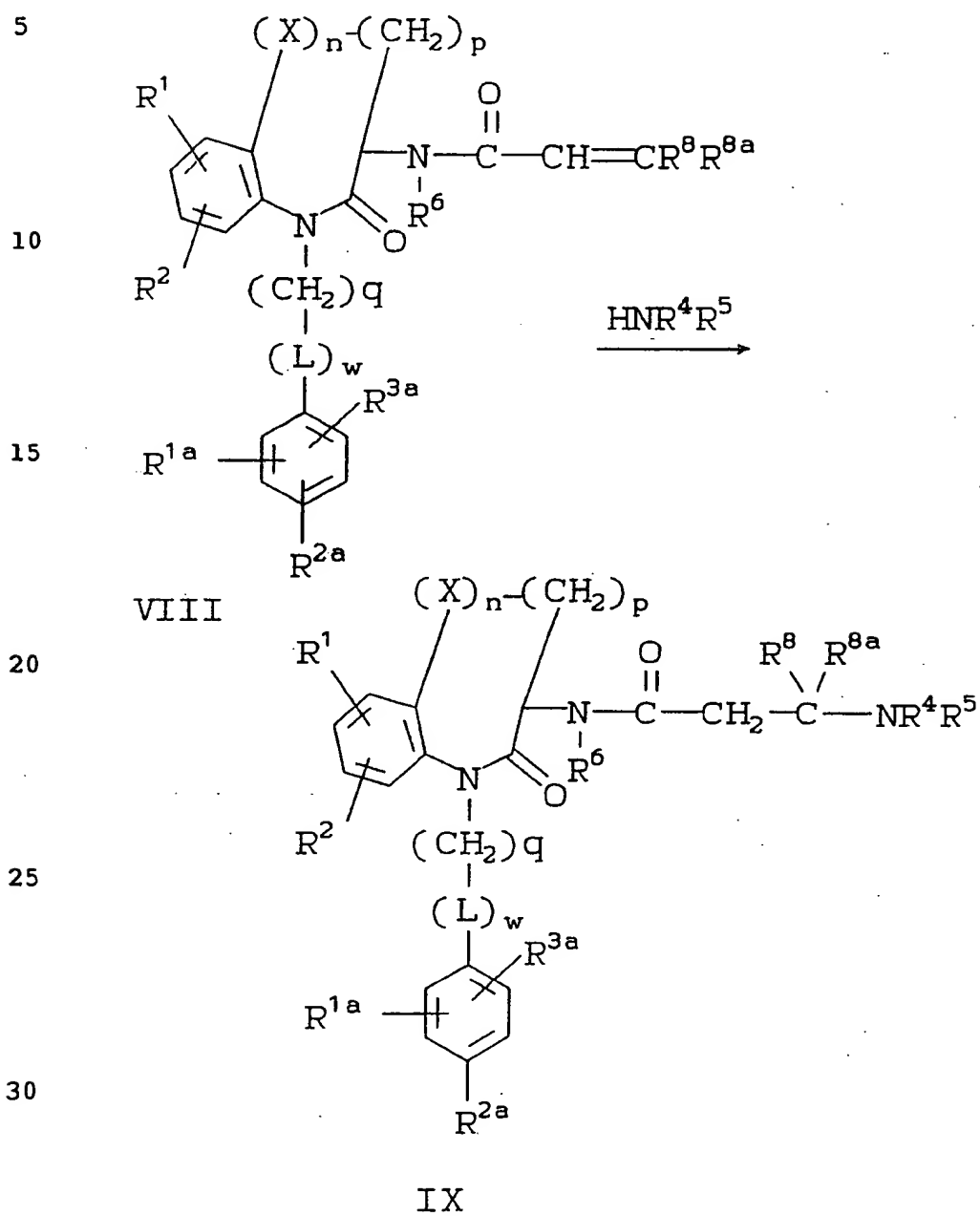
25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 57 -

Scheme 20



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 58 -

Thus, reaction of intermediates of Formula VIII with
HNR⁴R⁵ neat or in a polar solvent such as
dimethylsulfoxide at temperatures of 50°C to 200°C,
5 results in a Michael addition to give compounds of
Formula IX. Compounds of Formula VIII may themselves
be prepared by the transformations illustrated in
Schemes 9 and 11.

10 It is noted that the order of carrying out
the foregoing reaction schemes is not significant and
it is within the skill of one skilled in the art to
vary the order of reactions to facilitate the
reaction or to avoid unwanted reaction products.

15

20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 59 -

The growth hormone releasing compounds of Formula I are useful in vitro as unique tools for understanding how growth hormone secretion is regulated at the pituitary level. This includes use in the evaluation of many factors thought or known to influence growth hormone secretion such as age, sex, nutritional factors, glucose, amino acids, fatty acids, as well as fasting and non-fasting states. In addition, the compounds of this invention can be used in the evaluation of how other hormones modify growth hormone releasing activity. For example, it has already been established that somatostatin inhibits growth hormone release. Other hormones that are important and in need of study as to their effect on growth hormone release include the gonadal hormones, e.g., testosterone, estradiol, and progesterone; the adrenal hormones, e.g., cortisol and other corticoids, epinephrine and norepinephrine; the pancreatic and gastrointestinal hormones, e.g., insulin, glucagon, gastrin, secretin; the vasoactive intestinal peptides, e.g., bombesin; and the thyroid hormones, e.g., thyroxine and triiodothyronine. The compounds of Formula I can also be employed to investigate the possible negative or positive feedback effects of some of the pituitary hormones, e.g., growth hormone and endorphin peptides, on the pituitary to modify growth hormone release. Of particular scientific importance is the use of these compounds to elucidate the subcellular mechanisms mediating the release of growth hormone.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 60 -

5 The compounds of Formula I can be
administered to animals, including man, to release
growth hormone in vivo. For example, the compounds
can be administered to commercially important animals
such as swine, cattle, sheep and the like to
accelerate and increase their rate and extent of
growth, and to increase milk production in such
animals. In addition, these compounds can be
10 administered to humans in vivo as a diagnostic tool
to directly determine whether the pituitary is
capable of releasing growth hormone. For example,
the compounds of Formula I can be administered in vivo
to children. Serum samples taken before and after
15 such administration can be assayed for growth
hormone. Comparison of the amounts of growth hormone
in each of these samples would be a means for
directly determining the ability of the patient's
pituitary to release growth hormone.

20 Accordingly, the present invention includes
within its scope pharmaceutical compositions
comprising, as an active ingredient, at least one of
the compounds of Formula I in association with a
pharmaceutical carrier or diluent. Optionally, the
25 active ingredient of the pharmaceutical compositions
can comprise a growth promoting agent in addition to
at least one of the compounds of Formula I or another
composition which exhibits a different activity,
e.g., an antibiotic or other pharmaceutically active
30 material.

- 61 -

Growth promoting agents include, but are not limited to, TRH, diethylstilbesterol, theophylline, enkephalins, E series prostaglandins, compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 3,239,345, e.g., zeranol, and compounds disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,036,979, e.g., sulbenox or peptides disclosed in U.S. Patent No. 4,411,890.

A still further use of the disclosed novel benzo-fused lactam growth hormone secretagogues is in combination with other growth hormone secretagogues such as GHRP-6, GHRP-1 as described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,411,890; and publications WO 89/07110 and WO 89/07111 and B-HT920 or growth hormone releasing factor and its analogs or growth hormone and its analogs or somatomedins including IGF-1 and IGF-2.

As is well known to those skilled in the art, the known and potential uses of growth hormone are varied and multitudinous. Thus, the administration of the compounds of this invention for purposes of stimulating the release of endogenous growth hormone can have the same effects or uses as growth hormone itself. These varied uses of growth hormone may be summarized as follows: stimulating growth hormone release in elderly humans; Prevention of catabolic side effects of glucocorticoids, treatment of osteoporosis, stimulation of the immune system, treatment of retardation, acceleration of wound healing, accelerating bone fracture repair, treatment of growth retardation, treating renal failure or insufficiency resulting in growth retardation, treatment of physiological short

- 62 -

stature, including growth hormone deficient children,
treating short stature associated with chronic
illness, treatment of obesity and growth retardation
5 associated with obesity, treating growth retardation
associated with Prader-Willi syndrome and Turner's
syndrome; Accelerating the recovery and reducing
hospitalization of burn patients; Treatment of
intrauterine growth retardation, skeletal dysplasia,
10 hypercortisolism and Cushing's syndrome; Induction of
pulsatile growth hormone release; Replacement of
growth hormone in stressed patients; Treatment of
osteochondrodysplasias, Noonan's syndrome,
schizophrenia, depression, Alzheimer's disease,
15 delayed wound healing, and psychosocial deprivation;
treatment of pulmonary dysfunction and ventilator
dependency; Attenuation of protein catabolic response
after a major operation; reducing cachexia and
protein loss due to chronic illness such as cancer or
20 AIDS. Treatment of hyperinsulinemia including
nesidioblastosis; Adjuvant treatment for ovulation
induction; To stimulate thymic development and
prevent the age-related decline of thymic function;
Treatment of immunosuppressed patients; Improvement
25 in muscle strength, mobility, maintenance of skin
thickness, metabolic homeostasis, renal homeostasis
in the frail elderly; Stimulation of osteoblasts,
bone remodelling, and cartilage growth; Stimulation
of the immune system in companion animals and
30 treatment of disorders of aging in companion animals;
Growth promotant in livestock; and stimulation of
wool growth in sheep.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 63 -

The compounds of this invention can be administered by oral, parenteral (e.g., intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous or subcutaneous injection, or implant), nasal, vaginal, rectal, sublingual, or topical routes of administration and can be formulated in dosage forms appropriate for each route of administration.

Solid dosage forms for oral administration include capsules, tablets, pills, powders and granules. In such solid dosage forms, the active compound is admixed with at least one inert pharmaceutically acceptable carrier such as sucrose, lactose, or starch. Such dosage forms can also comprise, as is normal practice, additional substances other than inert diluents, e.g., lubricating agents such as magnesium stearate. In the case of capsules, tablets and pills, the dosage forms may also comprise buffering agents. Tablets and pills can additionally be prepared with enteric coatings.

Liquid dosage forms for oral administration include pharmaceutically acceptable emulsions, solutions, suspensions, syrups, the elixirs containing inert diluents commonly used in the art, such as water. Besides such inert diluents, compositions can also include adjuvants, such as wetting agents, emulsifying and suspending agents, and sweetening, flavoring, and perfuming agents.

Preparations according to this invention for parenteral administration include sterile aqueous or non-aqueous solutions, suspensions, or emulsions.

- 64 -

Examples of non-aqueous solvents or vehicles are propylene glycol, polyethylene glycol, vegetable oils, such as olive oil and corn oil, gelatin, and injectable organic esters such as ethyl oleate. Such dosage forms may also contain adjuvants such as preserving, wetting, emulsifying, and dispersing agents. They may be sterilized by, for example, filtration through a bacteria-retaining filter, by incorporating sterilizing agents into the compositions, by irradiating the compositions, or by heating the compositions. They can also be manufactured in the form of sterile solid compositions which can be dissolved in sterile water, or some other sterile injectable medium immediately before use.

Compositions for rectal or vaginal administration are preferably suppositories which may contain, in addition to the active substance, excipients such as cocoa butter or a suppository wax.

Compositions for nasal or sublingual administration are also prepared with standard excipients well known in the art.

The dosage of active ingredient in the compositions of this invention may be varied; however, it is necessary that the amount of the active ingredient be such that a suitable dosage form is obtained. The selected dosage depends upon the desired therapeutic effect, on the route of administration, and on the duration of the treatment. Generally, dosage levels of between 0.0001 to 100 mg/kg. of body weight daily are administered to patients and animals, e.g., mammals, to obtain effective release of growth hormone.

- 65 -

The following examples are provided for the purpose of further illustration only and are not intended to be limitations on the disclosed invention.

5

Example 1

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10

Step A: 3-Amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A solution of 9.22 g (45.6 mmol) of 3-azido-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (prepared by the method of Watthey, et al., J. Med. Chem., 28, 1511-1516 (1985)) in 30mL methanol was hydrogenated at 40psi in the presence of 1.0g of 5% Pt/C for 4.5 hours. Celite was added and the mixture filtered through a pad of Celite. The filtrate was concentrated and allowed to stand for 16 hours at room temperature which resulted in formation of crystals. The material was isolated by filtration and dried under vacuum to afford 4.18g (23.7mmol, 52%) of the product. The mother liquors were diluted to 100mL with methanol, treated with 2g of charcoal, filtered through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to approximately 15 mL. A second crop formed yielding 2.02 g of product (11.5mmol, 25%). Another recycling of the mother liquors afforded a third crop of 0.88g (5.0, 11%). A total of 7.08g (40.2mmol, 88%) of the product was thus obtained. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.6 (br s, 2H), 1.80 (m, 1H),

15

20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 66 -

2.55 (m, 2H), 2.88 (m, 1H), 3.42 (dd; 7Hz, 11Hz; 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.2 (m, 3H), 8.3 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_{12}N_2O$ 176; found 177 (M+H, 100%).

5

Step B: 3(R)-Amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

2.37g (13.5mmol) of 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Step A) and 2.02g (13.5mmol) of L-tartaric acid were suspended in 40mL of ethanol. The mixture was gently heated and complete dissolution achieved by dropwise addition of 5mL of distilled water. The solution was cooled to room temperature and aged overnight. The solid that formed was removed by filtration, washed with ethanol/diethyl ether (1:1) and dried under vacuum to afford 1.75g of crude L-tartrate salt. The mother liquors were evaporated to dryness under vacuum, redissolved in 40mL of water and the pH adjusted to 10-11 by the addition of solid potassium carbonate. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (6x20mL) and the combined extracts washed with water (1x) and brine (1x), dried over potassium carbonate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum to afford 1.29g (7.33mmol) of partially enriched 3(R) amine.

25

The original 1.75g batch of L-tartrate salt was recrystallized twice from aqueous ethanol to afford 1.03g (3.17mmol, 24%) of purified L-tartrate salt with $[\alpha]_D^{20} = -21.2^\circ$ (c=1, H₂O). The purified L-tartrate salt was dissolved in 20mL of water and the pH adjusted to 10-11 by the addition of solid potassium carbonate. The mixture was extracted with chloroform (5x10mL); combined extracts were washed

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 67 -

with water and brine then dried over potassium carbonate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum to afford 522mg (2.96mmol, 22% overall) of the 3(S) amine, $[\alpha]_D = -446^\circ$ ($c=1, \text{CH}_3\text{OH}$).

The remaining 1.29g (7.33mmol) of partially enriched 3(R) amine was treated with 1.10g (7.33mmol) of D-tartaric acid as described above and the resulting salt recrystallized twice from aqueous ethanol to afford 1.20g of purified D-tartrate salt, $[\alpha]_D = -214^\circ$ ($c=1, \text{H}_2\text{O}$). The purified D-tartrate salt was dissolved in 20mL of water and the free base isolated as described above to give 629mg (3.57mmol, 26% overall) of the 3(R) amine, $[\alpha]_D = +455^\circ$ ($c=1, \text{CH}_3\text{OH}$).

Step C: 2,2-Dimethylbutanedioic acid, 4-methyl ester
2,2-dimethylsuccinic acid (20g, 137mmol) dissolved in 200mL absolute methanol at 0° was treated dropwise with 2mL concentrated sulfuric acid. After the addition was complete, the mixture was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours.

The mixture was concentrated in vacuo to 50mL and slowly treated with 200mL of saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The mixture was washed with hexane (3x) and the aqueous layer removed and cooled in an ice bath. The mixture was acidified to pH 2 by slow addition of 6N HCl then extracted with ether (8x). The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was dried at room temperature under vacuum to afford 14.7g

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 68 -

(91.8mmol, 67%) of a viscous oil that slowly solidified upon standing. ¹H NMR analysis indicates the product is a mixture of the title compound and 15% of the isomeric 2,2-dimethylbutanedioic acid, 1-methyl ester. NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃) of title compound: 1.29 (s,6H), 2.60 (s,2H), 3.66 (s,3H). NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃) of isomer: 1.28 (s,6H), 2.63 (s,2H), 3.68 (s,3H).

Step D: 3-[Benzyloxycarbonylamino]-3-methylbutanoic acid, methyl ester

To 14.7g (91.8mmol) of 2,2-dimethylbutanedioic acid-4-methyl ester (Step C), containing 15% of the isomeric 1-methyl ester compound, in 150mL benzene was added 13mL of triethylamine (9.4g, 93mmol, 1.01eq) followed by 21.8mL diphenylphosphoryl azide (27.8g, 101mmol, 1.1eq). The mixture was heated under nitrogen at reflux for 45 minutes then 19mL (19.9g, 184mmol, 2eq) of benzyl alcohol was added and refluxing continued for 16 hours.

The mixture was cooled, filtered and the filtrate concentrated to a minimum volume under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 250mL ethyl acetate, washed with water (1x), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x) and brine (1x). The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate concentrated to a minimum volume in vacuo. The crude product was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (4:1), to afford 18.27g (68.9mmol, 75%) of the title compound as a pale yellow liquid in addition to a small amount of

- 69 -

pure 3-[benzyloxycarbonylamino]-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid, methyl ester. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃) of title compound: 1.40 (s,6H), 2.69 (s,2H), 3.63 (s,3H), 5.05 (s,2H), 5.22 (br s,1H), 7.32 (s,5H). ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃) of 3-[benzyloxycarbonylamino]-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid, methyl ester (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.19 (s,6H), 3.30 (d,7Hz,2H; resonance collapses to singlet in CD₃OD), 3.67 (s,3H), 5.09 (s,2H), 5.22 (br s,1H; resonance not observed in CD₃OD), 7.3 (br s,5H).

Step E: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid

A solution of 18.27g (68.9mmol) of methyl 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoate (Step D) in 20mL of methanol at room temperature was treated dropwise with 51mL of 2N NaOH (102mmol, 1.5eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours then transferred to a separatory funnel and washed with hexane (3x). The aqueous layer was removed, cooled to 0° and slowly acidified to pH 2 (paper) by dropwise addition of 6N HCl. This mixture was extracted with ether (6x); combined extracts were washed with 1N HCl and brine, then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvent removed under vacuum to afford 17.26g (68.7mmol, 99%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.42 (s,6H), 2.77 (s,2H), 5.06 (s,2H), 5.2 (br s,1H), 7.3 (s,5H).

Step F: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

- 70 -

To a solution of 252mg (1.43mmol) of 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Step B) in 4mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was added 400mg (1.60mmol, 1.1eq) of 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Step E) followed by 760mg (1.7mmol, 1.2eq) benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate and 0.50mL of diisopropylethylamine (380mg, 2.9mmol, 2eq). After 3 hours at room temperature, the mixture was diluted into 30mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 5% aqueous citric acid, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x) and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate to afford 586mg (1.43mmol, 100%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.82 (m, 1H), 2.52 (s, 2H), 2.5-3.0 (m, 3H), 4.51 (m, 1H), 5.07 (br s, 2H), 5.57 (br s, 1H), 6.68 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 8H), 7.61 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₃H₂₇N₃O₄ 409; found 410 (M+H, 100%); [α]_D²⁵ = +137° (c=1, CHCl₃).

Step G: 5-Phenyltetrazole

Zinc chloride (3.3g, 24.3mmol, 0.5eq) was added to 15mL of N,N-dimethylformamide in small portions while maintaining the temperature below 60°C. The suspension of zinc chloride was cooled to room temperature and treated with 5.0g of benzonitrile (48.5mmol, 1.0eq) followed by 3.2g of sodium azide (48.5mmol, 1.0eq). The heterogeneous mixture was heated at 115°C with agitation for 18

- 71 -

hours. The mixture was cooled to room temperature, water (30mL) was added and the mixture acidified by the addition of 5.1mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The mixture was cooled to 0°C and aged for one hour, then filtered and the filter cake washed with 15mL of cold 0.1N HCl then dried at 60°C under vacuum to afford 6.38g (43.7mmol, 90%) of the product.

10 Step H: 5-Phenyl-2-trityltetrazole

To a suspension of 5.0g (34.2mmol) of 5-phenyltetrazole in 55mL of acetone was added 5.0mL of triethylamine (3.6g, 35.6mmol, 1.04eq). After 15 minutes, a solution of 10.0g of triphenylmethyl chloride (35.9mmol, 1.05eq) in 20mL of tetrahydrofuran was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for one hour. Water (75mL) was slowly added and the mixture stirred for one hour at room temperature. The product was collected by filtration, washed with 75mL of water and dried at 60°C under vacuum to give 13.3g (34.2mmol, 100%) of the product.

25 Step I: N-Triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-methylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole

A solution of zinc chloride (6.3g, 46.2mmol, 0.6eq) in 35mL of tetrahydrofuran was dried over molecular sieves. 5-Phenyl-2-trityltetrazole (30.0g, 77.3mmol, 1.0eq) was dissolved in 300mL of dry tetrahydrofuran and the solution gently stirred while being degassed three times by alternating vacuum and nitrogen purges. The stirred solution was cooled to

- 72 -

-15°C and treated slowly with 50.5mL of 1.6M
n-butyllithium in hexane (80.0mmol, 1.05eq) so as to
maintain the temperature below -5°C. The solution
5 was maintained at -5 to -15°C for 1.5 hours then
treated with the dried zinc chloride solution and
allowed to warm to room temperature.

In a separate flask, 4-iodotoluene (20.17g,
92.5mmol, 1.2eq) and bis-(triphenylphosphine)nickel-
10 (II) dichloride (1.5g, 2.3mmol, 0.03eq) were
dissolved in 60mL of tetrahydrofuran, then degassed
and left under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The
mixture was cooled to 5°C and treated with 1.5mL of
3.0M solution of methylmagnesium chloride in
15 tetrahydrofuran (4.5mmol, 0.06eq) so as to keep the
temperature below 10°C. The solution was warmed to
room temperature and added, under nitrogen purge, to
the arylzinc solution. The reaction mixture was
stirred vigorously for 8 hours at room temperature
20 then quenched by the slow addition of a solution of
10mL of glacial acetic acid (1.6mmol, 0.02eq) in 60mL
of tetrahydrofuran at a rate so that the temperature
was maintained below 40°C. The mixture was stirred
for 30 minutes and 150mL of 80% saturated aqueous
25 sodium chloride was added; the reaction mixture was
extracted for 30 minutes and the layers allowed to
separate. The organic layer was removed and washed
with 150mL of 80% saturated aqueous sodium chloride
buffered to pH>10 by the addition of ammonium
30 hydroxide. The organic phase was removed and
concentrated under vacuum to approximately 50mL then
250mL of acetonitrile was added. The mixture was

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 73 -

again concentrated under vacuum to 50mL and acetonitrile added to make the final volume 150mL. The resulting slurry was cooled at 5°C for 1 hour then filtered and washed with 50mL of cold acetonitrile followed by 150mL of distilled water. The filter cake was air dried to a free flowing solid then further dried under vacuum at 50°C for 12 hours to afford 30.0g (62.8mmol, 81%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.28 (s,3H), 6.9-7.05 (m,10H), 7.2-7.5 (m,12H), 7.9 (m,1H).

Step J: N-Triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole

A solution of 3.15g (6.6mmol) of N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-methylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole (Step I) in 25mL of methylene chloride was treated with 1.29g (7.25mmol, 1.1eq) of N-bromosuccinimide, 80mg (0.5mmol, 0.07eq) of AIBN, 200mg of sodium acetate and 200mg of acetic acid. The mixture was heated at reflux for 2 to 16 hours then cooled and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The organic layer was removed, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to a minimum volume by atmospheric distillation. Methyl t-butyl ether was added and distillation continued until almost all the methylene chloride was removed the the total volume reduce to approximately 12mL and 12mL of hexanes was then added. The mixture was kept at room temperature for 2 hours and the product isolated by filtration, washed with hexanes then dried under vacuum at 50°C to give 2.81g (5.04mmol,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 74 -

76%) of the product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 4.38 (s, 2H), 6.9-8.0 (m, 23H). NMR indicates presence of approximately 1% of the starting material and 7% of the dibromo derivative.

Step K: 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

To a solution of 437mg (1.07mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step F in 2mL of dry dimethylformamide at room temperature under nitrogen was added 55mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (33mg NaH, 1.38mmol, 1.3eq). After 15 minutes, a solution of 715mg (1.28mmol, 1.2eq) N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole (Step J) in 1.5mL of dry dimethylformamide was added and the mixture stirred for 90 minutes.

The reaction mixture was added to 100mL of ethyl acetate and washed with water (2x) and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (1:1), afforded 902mg (1.02mmol, 95%) of the product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.68 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.5 (m, 5H), 4.44 (m, 1H), 4.67 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 5.12 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.63 (br 1, 1H), 6.65 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 31H), 7.85 (m, 1H).

- 75 -

Step L: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide, trifluoroacetate

5 A solution of 902mg (1.02mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step H in 5mL methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and one atmosphere over 160mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂/C for 14 hours. The
10 mixture was filtered through Celite and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol increased to 80% methanol over 10 minutes)
15 to afford 568mg (0.91mmol, 89%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H), 4.35 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.86 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS:
20 calculated for C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₂ 509; found 510 (M+H, 100%).

Example 2

25 3-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide, mono(hydrochloride)

Step A 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
30 hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide

To a solution of 50mg (0.28mmol) 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1;

- 76 -

Step A) in 2mL methylene chloride at room temperature was added 56mg (0.30mmol, 1.05eq) 3-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)propanoic acid followed by 0.1mL diisopropylethylamine (74mg, 0.57mmol, 2eq) and 190mg (0.43mmol, 1.5eq) benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate. After 1 hour at room temperature, the mixture was added to 20mL ethyl acetate and washed with 1M aqueous citric acid, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (2:1) to afford 76mg (0.22mmol, 77%) of product as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.95 (m, 1H), 2.40 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.6-3.0 (m, 3H), 3.36 (q, 6Hz, 2H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 5.15 (br t, 1H), 6.58 (br d, 1H), 7.0-7.3 (m, 4H), 7.6 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₁₈H₂₅N₃O₄ 347; found 348 (M+H, 35%).

Step B 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-1H-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

To a solution of 68mg (0.20mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 0.5mL dry dimethylformamide under nitrogen was added 10mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (6mg NaH, 0.25mmol, 1.3eq). After 15min., a solution of 142mg (0.26mmol, 1.3eq) N-triphenylmethyl-5-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-2-

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 77 -

yl)tetrazole (Example 1, Step J) in 0.5mL dimethylformamide was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 4 hours. The mixture was
5 added to 30mL ethyl acetate and washed twice with pH 7.0 phosphate buffer and once with brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid
10 chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate to afford 152mg (0.18mmol, 94%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 5H), 3.35 (q, 6Hz, 2H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 4.70 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.12 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.53
15 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, approx. 25H), 7.85 (m, 1H).

Step C 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
20 propanamide

The intermediate obtained in Step B (150mg, 0.18mmol) dissolved in 5mL methanol was hydrogenated over 30mg of Pd(OH)₂ on carbon at one atmosphere for 2 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and
25 the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/acetonitrile/methanol (9:1:1) to afford 62mg (0.11mmol, 59%) of the product as a colorless glass. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.39 (s, 9H), 2.0-2.5 (m, 6H), 3.26
30 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 4.31 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.83 (d, 16Hz, 1H),

- 78 -

5.20 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 10H).
FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{32}H_{35}N_7O_4$ 581; found 582
(M+H, 19%).

5

Step D 3-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide,
mono(hydrochloride)

10

To a solution of 40mg (0.07mmol) of the
intermediate obtained in Step C in 2mL methanol at
room temperature was added 0.5mL of concentrated
hydrochloric acid and the mixture stirred for 16
hours. All volatiles were removed under vacuum and
the residue further dried under high vacuum to afford
15 35mg (0.07mmol, 100%) of the title compound as a pale
yellow glass. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 2.0-2.8
(m, 6H), 3.22 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 4.30 (dd; 7, 10Hz; 1H), 4.83
(d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
20 7.1-7.6 (m, 10H). FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{27}H_{27}N_7O_2$ 481;
found 482 (M+H, 100%).

Example 3

25

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
(phenylmethyl)-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

30

Step A: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-1-benza-
zepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

To a solution of 40mg (0.098mmol) of
3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-

- 79 -

hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
(Example 1, Step F) in 0.5mL of dry dimethylformamide
at room temperature under nitrogen was added 5mg of
5 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (3mg NaH, 0.13mmol,
1.3eq). After 5 minutes, 0.013mL of benzyl bromide
(19mg, 0.11mmol, 1.1eq) was added and the mixture
stirred for 1 hour at room temperature, then added to
20mL of ethyl acetate and washed with water (2x) and
10 brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over
magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed
under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium
pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting
with ethyl acetate/hexane (1:1) to afford 44mg
15 (0.88mmol, 90%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CDCl₃): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.73 (m, 1H),
2.3-2.6 (m, 5H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.80 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.07
(br s, 2H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.62 (br s, 1H), 6.67 (br
d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 14H). FAB-MS: calculated for
20 C₃₀H₃₃N₃O₄ 499; found 500 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-(phenylmethyl)-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25 The intermediate obtained in Step A (17mg,
0.034mmol) dissolved in 2mL of methanol was
hydrogenated for 6 hours at room temperature and one
atmosphere over 5mg of Pd(OH)₂ on carbon. The
mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate
30 concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified
by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with
methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear

- 80 -

gradient: 60% methanol to 80% methanol over 10 minutes) to afford 13mg (0.027mmol, 80%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.35 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 4.35 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.82 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.13 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.1-7.4 (m,9H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₂H₂₇N₃O₂ 365; found 366 (M+H,100%).

Example 4

2(R)-Amino-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

Step A 3(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

To a solution of 400mg (2.27mmol) 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) in 5mL methylene chloride at room temperature was added 0.57mL (540mg, 2.48mmol, 1.1eq) of di-t-butyl dicarbonate. The mixture was stirred for 3 hours at room temperature then all volatiles were removed under vacuum to give 625mg (2.26mmol, 100%) of an oil that slowly solidified upon standing. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.40 (s,9H), 2.00 (m,1H), 2.65 (m,2H), 2.95 (m,1H), 4.29 (m,1H), 5.42 (br d,8Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.2 (m,3H), 7.50 (br s,1H).

- 81 -

Step B 3(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-1H-tetra-
zol-5-yl]][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
5 benzazepin-2-one

To a solution of 310mg (1.12mmol) of the
intermediate obtained in Step A in 2mL dry
dimethylformamide at room temperature under nitrogen
was added 54mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion
10 (32mg NaH, 1.3mmol, 1.2eq). After 15 minutes, a
solution of 750mg (1.34mmol, 1.2eq) N-triphenylmethyl-
5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole in 2mL
dry dimethylformamide was added and the mixture
stirred for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was added
15 to 50mL of ethyl acetate and washed with pH 7.0
phosphate buffer (2x) and brine. The organic layer
was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered
and solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by
medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica,
20 eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (2:1), afforded
815mg (1.08mmol, 96%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CDCl₃): 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 3H), 4.24
(m, 1H), 4.65 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.08 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.45 (br
d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.8 (m, 1H).

25 Step C 3(R)-Amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
2H-1-benzazepin-2-one, mono(hydrochloride)

A solution of 407mg (0.54mmol) of the
30 intermediate obtained in Step B in 5mL methanol was
hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere
over 40mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂ on carbon for 3 hours. The

- 82 -

5 mixture was filtered through Celite and concentrated
under vacuum to give a residue that was purified by
medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica
eluting with 2% methanol/ethyl acetate. The
intermediate thus obtained (260mg) was dissolved in
5mL of methanol and treated with 1mL concentrated
hydrochloric acid. After 16 hours, all volatiles
were removed under vacuum to afford 226mg (0.51mmol,
10 94%) of product.

Step D 2(R)-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-3-(t-butoxy)-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetra-
zol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
15 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

To a suspension of 60mg (0.13mmol) of the
intermediate obtained in Step C in 2mL of methylene
chloride at room temperature was added 65mg
(0.15mmol, 1.1eq) of BOC-D-serine t-butyl ether
20 dicyclohexylamine salt, followed by 0.037mL of
triethylamine (27mg, 0.26mmol, 2eq) and 89mg of
benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium
hexafluorophosphate (0.20mmol, 1.5eq). After 1 hour
at room temperature, all volatiles were removed under
25 vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure
liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with 2%
methanol/ethyl acetate to afford 68mg (0.10mmol, 77%)
of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.15 (s, 9H),
1.32 (s, 9H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.54 (m, 3H), 3.36
30 (dd; 6.9Hz; 1H), 3.72 (m, 1H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 4.45 (m, 1H),
4.89 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.05 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.38 (br

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 83 -

d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 9H), 7.90 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{36}H_{43}N_7O_5$ 653; found 654 (M+H, 8%).

5

Step E 2(R)-Amino-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

10

A solution of 65mg (0.099mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step D in 2mL methylene chloride at room temperature was treated with 0.1mL of anisole followed by 1mL anhydrous trifluoroacetic acid. After 2 hours, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 55% methanol to 75% methanol over 10 minutes). to afford 54mg (0.088mmol, 89%) of the title compound. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 3H), 3.93 (m, 2H), 4.38 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.29 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.01 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{27}H_{27}N_7O_3$ 497; found 498 (M+H, 100%).

25

Example 5

2(R)-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-pentanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

30

- 84 -

Step A N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-norvaline

D-Norvaline (2.0g, 17.0mmol) suspended in 5mL methylene chloride was treated with 4.3mL of di-t-butyl-dicarbonate (4.1g, 18.7mmol, 1.1eq) followed by 4.8mL of triethylamine (3.5g, 34mmol, 2eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 20 hours then added to 100mL ethyl acetate and washed with 5% citric acid (2x) and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvent removed under vacuum to afford 3.55g of the product as a clear, viscous gum. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.00 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 1.51 (s, 9H), 1.5-2.0 (m, 4H), 4.35 (m, 1H), 5.08 (m, 1H).

Step B 2(R)-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-pentanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was prepared from N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-norvaline and 3(R)-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride (Example 4, Step C), using the procedures described in Example 4, Steps D and E. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.96 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 1.45 (m, 2H), 1.80 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 4H), 3.81 (t, 7Hz, 1H), 4.36 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.8 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.96 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 6H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₂ 509; found 510 (M+H, 100%).

- 85 -

Example 6

5 2(R)-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoro-
acetate)

The title compound was prepared from
10 N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-valine and 3(R)-amino-1,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride
(Example 4, Step C), using the procedures described
in Example 4, Steps D and E. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
15 CD₃OD): 1.05 (d,7Hz,3H), 1.09 (d,7Hz,3H), 2.0-2.6
(m,5H), 3.68 (d,5Hz,1H), 4.40 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.8
(d,15Hz,1H), 5.23 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.1-7.3 (m,6H), 7.4-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for
C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₂ 509; found 510 (M+H,100%).

20

Example 7

25 2(R)-Amino-3-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoro
acetate)

Step A 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-phenyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-
30 3(R)-yl]-propanamide

To a solution of 30mg (0.17mmol) 3(R)-amino-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1;

- 86 -

Step B) in 2mL methylene chloride at room temperature was added 50mg (0.19mmol, 1.1eq) N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-phenylalanine followed by 0.047mL (34mg, 0.34mmol, 2eq) of triethylamine and 113mg (0.26mmol, 1.5eq) benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate. After 2 hours at room temperature, the mixture was added to 30mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 5% citric acid (2x), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate to afford 71mg (0.17mmol, 100%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.9 (m, 1H), 2.6-3.1 (m, 5H), 4.44 (m, 2H), 5.10 (br d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.95 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 8H), 8.33 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₂₄H₂₉N₃O₄ 423; found 424 (M+H, 65%).

Step B 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-1H-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

To a solution of 70mg (0.17mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 0.5mL dry dimethylformamide at room temperature under nitrogen was added 8mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (5mg NaH, 0.2mmol, 1.2eq). After 10min., a solution of 120mg (0.21mmol, 1.3eq) N-triphenylmethyl-5-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-2-yl)tetrazole in 0.5mL

- 87 -

dimethylformamide was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was added to 30mL of ethyl acetate/hexane (1:1) and washed with pH 7.0 phosphate buffer and once with brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (2:1) to afford 139mg (0.15mmol, 93%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.67 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.7 (m, 3H), 3.02 (d, 6Hz, 2H), 4.37 (m, 2H), 4.72 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.90 (br d, 1H), 5.05 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, approx. 30H), 7.86 (m, 1H).

Step C 2(R)-Amino-3-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

A solution of 139mg (0.15mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 5mL methanol was hydrogenated over 30mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂ on carbon at one atmosphere for 3 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 2mL methylene chloride and the solution treated with 0.1mL of anisole followed by 1mL trifluoroacetic acid. After 2 hours at room temperature, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol increased to 80% methanol over

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 88 -

10 minutes) affording 82mg (0.12mmol, 79%) of the
title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 2.1
(m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 3H), 3.00 (dd; 9, 14Hz; 1H), 3.33
(dd; 5, 14Hz; 1H), 4.13 (dd; 5, 9Hz; 1H), 4.38
(dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.89 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 11H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H).
FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₃H₃₁N₇O₂ 557; found 558
(M+H, 100%).

Example 8

2(R)-Amino-4-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoro-
acetate)

The title compound was prepared from
3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one
(Example 1; Step B) and N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-
homophenylalanine by the procedures described in
Example 7. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 2.1 (m, 3H),
2.2-2.6 (m, 3H), 2.75 (m, 2H), 3.94 (t, 7Hz, 1H), 4.30
(dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.84 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
6.97 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.7 (m, 15H). FAB-MS: calc.
for C₃₄H₃₃N₇O₂ 571; found 572 (M+H, 100%).

Example 9

2(R)-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-
azepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

- 89 -

The title compound was prepared from
3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one
(Example 1; Step B) and N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-
alanine by the procedures described in Example 7.
5 ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.51 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 2.0-2.6
(m, 4H), 3.90 (q, 7Hz, 1H), 4.36 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.82
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc.
10 for C₂₇H₂₇N₇O₂ 481; found 482 (M+H, 100%).

Example 10

2(S)-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-
15 tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-
azepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was prepared from
3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one
(Example 1; Step B) and N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-L-
alanine by the procedures described in Example 7.
20 ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.42 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 2.0-2.6
(m, 4H), 3.92 (q, 7Hz, 1H), 4.31 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.88
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.19 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc.
25 for C₂₇H₂₇N₇O₂ 481; found 482 (M+H, 100%).

Example 11

2(R)-Methylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
30 (1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoro-
acetate)

The title compound was prepared from
3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

- 90 -

(Example 1; Step B) and N-methyl-N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)-D-alanine by the procedures described in Example 7.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.52 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 2.0-2.6

(m, 4H), 2.60 (s, 3H), 3.81 (q, 7Hz, 1H), 4.36

(dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 15Hz, 1H),

6.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70

(m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₂₈H₂₉N₇O₂ 495; found 496 (M+H, 100%).

Example 12

2(R)-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-azepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

Step A: 2(R)-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)butanoic acid

(R)-2-Aminobutanoic acid (1.03g, 10.0mmol)

suspended in 5mL methylene chloride was treated with

2.3mL of di-t-butyl-dicarbonate (2.18g, 10.0mmol,

1eq) and 4mL of diisopropylethylamine (2.83g, 23mmol,

2.3eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature

for 16 hours then extracted with 30mL saturated

aqueous sodium bicarbonate. The aqueous layer was

washed with 20mL of methylene chloride then removed

and acidified to pH 2 by dropwise addition of

saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulfate. The

mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x20mL);

the combined extracts were dried over magnesium

sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum

to afford 451mg (2.2mmol, 22%) of product. ¹H NMR

(200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.93 (t, 8Hz, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H),

- 91 -

1.6-2.0 (m, 2H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 5.10 (br d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.45 (br s, 1H).

5 Step B: The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1; Step B) by the procedures described in Example 7. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.05 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 1.8-2.6 (m, 6H), 3.78 (t, 6Hz, 1H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.82 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₂₈H₂₉N₇O₂ 495; found 496 (M+H, 77%).

15

Example 13

2(R)-Amino-3-[indol-3-yl]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoro acetate)

25 Step A 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-[N-formyl-(indol-3-yl)]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-1H-tetrazol-5-yl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

30 This intermediate was prepared from N_a-t-butoxycarbonyl-N'-formyl-D-tryptophan and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1; Step B) by the procedures described in Example 7, Steps A and B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.43 (s, 9H), 2.3-2.5 (m, 4H), 3.09 (dd; 8, 13Hz; 1H), 3.28 (m, 1H), 4.4 (m, 2H), 4.73 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.94

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 92 -

(d,15Hz,1H), 5.2 (br s,1H), 6.65 (d,7Hz,1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, approx. 30H), 7.56 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.84 (m,1H), 8.18 (br s,1H).

5 Step B: 2(R)-Amino-3-[indol-3-yl]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

10 A solution of 125mg (0.13mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 2mL of methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and one atmosphere over 30mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂ on carbon for 3 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was
15 redissolved in 2mL of methylene chloride and treated with 0.1mL of anisole followed by 1mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After 1 hour at room temperature, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue redissolved in 2mL of methanol and
20 treated with 0.5mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The mixture was heated at 60°C for 2 hours then all volatiles were removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse-phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic
25 acid (linear gradient: 55% methanol increased to 75% methanol over 10 minutes) to afford 68mg (0.096mmol, 74%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 2.0 (m,1H), 2.2-2.6 (m,3H), 3.20 (dd;8,13Hz;1H), 3.44 (dd;6,13Hz;1H), 4.14 (dd;6,8Hz;1H), 4.29 (dd;6,11Hz;1H), 4.76 (d,15Hz,1H),
30 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.9-7.7 (m,17H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₅H₃₂N₈O₂ 596; found 597 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 93 -

Example 14

5 2(R)-Amino-3-[imidazol-4-yl]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono-(trifluoroacetate)

10 Step A 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-[N-tosyl-(imidazol-4-yl)]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide
Prepared from N_a-t-butoxycarbonyl-N_{im}-tosyl-D-histidine and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1; Step B) by the
15 procedure described in Example 7, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.70 (m, 1H), 2.42 (s, 3H), 2.5-2.9 (m, 5H), 4.42 (m, 2H), 5.77 (br s, 1H), 6.95 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.05 (s, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 3H), 7.33 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.58 (br d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.79 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.90 (s, 1H), 8.40 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for
20 C₂₈H₃₃N₅O₆S 567; found 568 (M+H, 100%).

25 Step B 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-[N-tosyl-(imidazol-4-yl)]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-1H-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide
Prepared from the product obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example
30 7, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.43 (s, 9H), 2.2-2.4 (m, 4H), 2.40 (s, 3H), 2.83 (dd; 5, 14Hz; 1H), 3.05 (dd; 6, 14Hz; 1H), 4.35 (m, 2H), 4.63 (d, 14Hz, 1H),

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 94 -

5.12 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.88 (br s, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, approx. 28H), 7.75-7.95 (m, 4H).

5 Step C: 2(R)-Amino-3-[imidazol-4-yl]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

10 A solution of 104mg (0.10mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 2mL of chloroform at room temperature was treated with 27mg (0.20mmol, 2eq) of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate. After 14 hours, the solvent was removed under vacuum and the
15 residue redissolved in 2mL of methanol and hydrogenated at one atmosphere over 20mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂/C for 3 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and solvent removed under vacuum. The
20 residue was redissolved in 2mL of methylene chloride and treated with 0.1mL of anisole followed by 1mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After 2 hours at room temperature, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse-phase HPLC on
25 C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 45% methanol increased to 65% methanol over 10 minutes) to afford 56mg (0.085mmol, 85%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 2.15-2.50 (m, 4H), 3.38 (dd; 6, 12Hz; 1H), 3.51 (dd; 4, 12Hz; 1H), 4.24 (dd; 4, 6Hz; 1H), 4.38 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 5.12 (s, 2H), 7.03 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 5H), 8.61 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₀H₂₉N₉O₂ 547; found 548 (M+H, 77%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 95 -

Example 15

5 2(S)-Amino-3-[imidazol-4-yl]-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono-(trifluoroacetate)

 The title compound was prepared from Na-t-butoxycarbonyl-N_{im}-tosyl-L-histidine, dicyclohexylamine salt and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1; Step B) by the procedures described in Example 14. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.9-2.6 (m, 4H), 3.25 (m, 2H), 4.16 (t, 7Hz, 1H), 4.31 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.88 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 11H), 8.82 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₀H₂₉N₉O₂ 547; found 548 (M+H, 81%).

Example 16

20 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

25 Step A: 3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

30 A solution of 50mg (0.080mmol) of 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate (Example 1) in

- 96 -

2mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was treated with 0.017mL of triethylamine (12mg, 0.12mmol, 1.5eq) followed by 0.021mL of di-t-butyl-dicarbonate (20mg, 0.091mmol, 1.1eq). The mixture was stirred for 14 hours then all volatiles were removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/acetonitrile/methanol (9:1:.5) to afford 42mg of product (0.069mmol, 86%). ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.25 (s,6H), 1.45 (s,9H), 2.0 (m,1H), 2.2-2.6 (m,5H), 4.32 (m,1H), 4.78 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.26 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.10-7.35 (m,6H), 7.40-7.60 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₄H₃₉N₇O₄ 609; found 610 (M+H, 22%).

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

A solution of 42mg (0.070mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 2mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was treated with a diethyl ether solution of diazomethane until a yellow color persisted. Glacial acetic acid (0.2mL) was added and all volatiles removed under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 2mL of methylene chloride and treated with 0.1mL of anisole followed by 0.5mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After two hours at room temperature, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient; 75% methanol

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 97 -

increased to 85% methanol over ten minutes). Two components were isolated: the title compound elutes first and 26mg (0.041mmol, 59%) was thus obtained. This was followed by the N₂ isomer (8mg, 0.013mmol, 18%) described in Example 17. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.13 (s,3H), 4.34 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.77 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.37 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,6H), 7.5-7.8 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₀H₃₃N₇O₂ 523; found 524 (M+H,100%).

Example 17

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(2-methyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was obtained from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate (Example 1) by the procedures described in Example 16. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 4.21 (s,3H), 4.37 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.87 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.6 (m,9H), 7.69 (d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₀H₃₃N₇O₂ 523; found 524 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 98 -

Example 18

5 3-(2-Benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-
(trifluoroacetate)

To a stirred solution of 50mg (0.080mmol)
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
10 (1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate
(Example 1) in 3mL of absolute methanol was added
0.022mL (16mg, 0.16mmol, 2eq) of triethylamine
followed by 120mg of powdered 3A molecular sieves.
15 To this stirred mixture was added a solution of
0.012mL (12mg, 0.08mmol, 1eq) of benzyloxyacetal-
dehyde (prepared from 2,3-O-isopropylideneglycerol by
the method of Shiao, et al, Synth. Comm., 18, 359
(1988)) in 2mL dry methanol. The pH of the reaction
20 mixture was adjusted to 7.5 (paper) by the addition
of triethylamine and trifluoroacetic acid and was
stirred for two hours. To this was added 0.48mL of a
1M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in
tetrahydrofuran (0.48mmol, 6eq). The reaction
25 mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours
then filtered and the filtrate treated with 2mL of
glacial acetic acid. After concentration under
vacuum, the residue was purified by reverse phase
HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous
30 trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol
increased to 80% methanol in 10 minutes) to afford
35mg (0.046mmol, 58%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6

- 99 -

(m,6H), 3.20 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.70 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.38 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.52 (s,2H), 4.93 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.11 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.3 (m,11H), 7.4-7.6 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{38}H_{41}N_7O_3$ 643; found 644 (M+H,100%).

Example 19

3-(2-hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

A solution of 12mg (0.016mmol) of 3-(2-benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate (Example 18) in 12mL of absolute methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi over 30% Pd/C for 24 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol increased to 80% methanol in 10 minutes) to afford 6.3mg (0.0094mmol, 59%) of the title compound. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.09 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.73 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.33 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.90 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.13 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,6H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{31}H_{35}N_7O_3$ 553; found 554 (M+H,100%).

- 100 -

Example 20

5 3-(2-Hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-
yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

10 Step A: 3-(2-Benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(2-
hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide, mono(trifluoroacetate) and
15 3-(2-Benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(2-
hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

To a solution of 40mg (0.053mmol) of 3-(2-
20 benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
mono(trifluoroacetate) (Example 18) in 3mL of
methanol was added a catalytic amount of pyridinium
25 p-toluenesulfonate. Ethylene oxide was bubbled
through the solution for five minutes; the flask was
capped tightly and the solution stirred at room
temperature for 24 hours. All volatiles were removed
under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse
30 phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1%
aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60%
methanol increased to 85% methanol in 10 minutes) to
afford 18mg (0.022mmol, 42%) of the N₁ product
followed by 6mg (0.0075mmol, 14%) of the N₂

- 101 -

product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.22 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.54 (m,4H), 3.71 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.37 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.55 (s,2H), 4.86 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.95 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,11H), 7.5-7.8 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{45}\text{N}_7\text{O}_4$ 687; found 688 (M+H,100%).

Step B: 3-(2-Hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-(trifluoroacetate)

A solution of 18mg (0.022mmol) of the N1 intermediate obtained in Step A in methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi over 30% Pd/C for 24 hours. The mixture was filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 55% methanol increased to 85% methanol in 10 minutes) to afford 12mg (0.017mmol, 75%) of the title compound. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.09 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.56 (br s,4H), 3.73 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.32 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.81 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.28 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.3 (m,6H), 7.-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_7\text{O}_4$ 597; found 598 (M+H,100%).

- 102 -

Example 21

5 3-(2-Hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-
yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

10 Step A: 3-(2-Benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(2-
hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

15 Prepared from 3-(2-benzyloxyethyl)amino-3-
methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1H-tetra-
zol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate) (Example
18) by the procedures described in Example 20, Step
A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.36
20 (s,3H), 2.0-2.7 (m,6H), 3.19 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.66
(t,5Hz,2H), 3.88 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.40 (dd;8,12Hz;1H),
4.50 (s,2H), 4.56 (t,5Hz,2H), 5.02 (br s,2H), 6.99
(d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.6 (m,15H). FAB-MS: calc. for
C₄₀H₄₅N₇O₄ 687; found 688 (M+H,100%).

25 Step B: 3-(2-Hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(2-hydroxyethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-
30 (trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure
described in Example 20, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz,

- 103 -

CD₃OD): 1.34 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H), 2.0-2.7 (m,6H),
3.08 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.72 (t,5Hz,2H), 3.90 (t,5Hz,2H),
4.35 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.59 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.96
5 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.10 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.02 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.1-7.7 (m,10H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₄
597; found 598 (M+H,67%).

Example 22

10

3-(2-Hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-
(trifluoroacetate)

15

Step A: 3-(2-Benzyloxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-
20 (trifluoroacetate)

20

This intermediate was prepared as a mixture
of diastereomers (at the carbinol carbon) from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(
1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
25 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate
(Example 1) and (+/-) 2-benzyloxypropionaldehyde
[prepared from 3-buten-2-ol by the method of Shiao, et
al, Synth. Comm., 18, 359 (1988)] by the procedure
described in Example 18, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
30 CD₃OD): 1.24 (m,3H), 1.34 (m,6H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H),
2.93 (dd;9,12Hz;1H), 3.16 (dd;3,12Hz;1H), 3.80
(m,1H), 4.40 (m,2H), 4.62 (m,2H), 4.8-5.2 (m,2H),
6.9-7.6 (m,17H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₉H₄₃N₇O₃
657; found 658 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 104 -

Step B: 3-(2-Hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)—

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 19. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.20 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 1.35 (m, 6H), 2.0-2.7 (m, 6H), 2.75 (m, 1H), 3.07 (dd; 3, 12Hz; 1H), 3.91 (m, 1H), 4.33 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.9 (m, 1H), 5.2 (m, 1H), 7.02 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 6.9-7.6 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₂H₃₇N₇O₃ 567; found 568 (M+H, 100%).

Example 23

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

Step A: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

To a solution of 54mg (0.099mmol) of 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide mono(trifluoroacetate) (Example 1) in 2mL of methylene chloride was added a catalytic amount of pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate. Ethylene oxide was bubbled through the solution for five minutes; the flask was capped tightly and the

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 105 -

solution stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. All volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol increased to 80% methanol in 10 minutes) to afford 37mg (0.055mmol, 56%) of the title compound followed by 15mg (0.022mmol, 22%) of the N2 product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.55 (m,4H), 4.33 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.79 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.31 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.99 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.3 (m,6H), 7.5-7.8 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₁H₃₅N₇O₃ 553; found 554 (M+H,100%).

Example 24

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(2-hydroxyethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono-(trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide mono(trifluoroacetate) (Example 1) by the procedure described in Example 23. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 3.90 (t,5Hz,2H), 4.37 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.60 (d,5Hz,2H), 4.91 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.17 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.01 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.6 (m,9H), 7.75 (d,7Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₁H₃₅N₇O₃ 553; found 554 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 106 -

Example 25

5 2-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-acetamide, hydrochloride

Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-acetamide

10 To a solution of 169mg (0.965 mmol) of N-(t-butoxycarbonyl) glycine in 2mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was added 222mg (1.158 mmol, 1.2eq) of 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride, 11mg (0.09mmol, 0.1eq) of
15 4-dimethylaminopyridine and 170mg (0.97 mmol, 1eq) of 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction was then
20 quenched by the addition of 5mL of 1M aqueous hydrochloric acid, and the aqueous phase extracted with methylene chloride (2x5mL). The combined organic phases were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum. The
25 residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel, eluting with ethyl acetate, to afford 218mg (0.65mmol, 68%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.43 (s,9H), 1.96 (m,1H), 2.83 (m,3H), 3.81(dq;2,8Hz;2H), 4.54 (m,1H), 5.21 (t,3Hz,1H), 7.15 (m,4H), 7.84 (br s,1H). FAB-MS:
30 calculated for C₁₇H₂₃N₃O₄ 333; found 334 (M+H,43%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 107 -

Step B: 2-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-acetamide

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.26
(s, 9H), 1.81 (m, 1H), 2.48 (m, 3H), 3.80 (dq; 3, 9Hz; 2H),
4.50 (m, 1H), 4.72 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 5.10 (d, 7Hz, 1H),
6.9-7.6 (m, 26H), 7.96 (m, 1H).

10

Step C: 2-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
acetamide

15

323mg (0.43mmol) of the intermediate
obtained in Step B was dissolved in 1mL of glacial
acetic acid and 1mL of water was added dropwise with
stirring. The reaction mixture was stirred at room
temperature for 16 hours then solvents were removed
under vacuum and the residue purified by flash
chromatography on a silica gel column, eluting with
ethyl acetate to afford 109mg (0.196mmol, 46%) of the
product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.97
(m, 1H), 2.55 (m, 3H), 3.65 (m, 2H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.85
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.05 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.51 (br s, 1H)
6.95-7.95 (m, 11H), 7.83 (d, 3Hz, 1H).

20

25

30

Step D: 2-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-acetamide,
hydrochloride

- 108 -

The intermediate obtained in Step C (109mg, 0.196mmol) was dissolved in 2mL of methanol and treated with 0.1mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours then solvents were removed under vacuum and the residue redissolved in water and washed with ethyl acetate. The aqueous layer was separated and the solvent removed under vacuum to yield 87mg (0.17mmol, 88%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.48 (m, 3H), 3.68 (s, 2H), 4.37 (m, 1H), 4.84 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.7 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₆H₂₅N₇O₂ 467; found 468 (M+H, 100%).

15

EXAMPLE 26

4-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

20

Step A: 4-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

25

Prepared from 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) and 4-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)butyric acid by the procedure described in Example 25, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.7-2.1 (m, 3H), 2.24 (t, 5Hz, 2H), 2.58-3.29 (m, 5H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 4.86 (br s, 1H), 7.0-7.3 (m, 4H), 8.32 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₉H₂₇N₃O₄ 361; found 362 (M+H, 60%).

30

- 109 -

Step B: 4-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-(triphenylmethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.42
(s, 9H), 1.78 (m, 3H), 2.20 (t, 5Hz, 2H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 2H),
3.13 (m, 2H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 4.70 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.10
(d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.64 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.8-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.85
(m, 1H).

10

Step C: 4-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
butanamide

15

The intermediate obtained in Step B (349mg,
0.40mmol) was dissolved in 5mL of methanol and
hydrogenated at room temperature and one atmosphere
over 70mg of 20% Pd(OH)₂/C for 16 hours. The
reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and
solvent removed under vacuum. The crude product was
purified by flash chromatography on silica, eluting
with 10% methanol/ethyl acetate to afford 168mg
(0.28mmol, 71%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.72 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H),
3.24 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 4.32 (m, 1H), 4.85 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.20
(d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.7 (m, 12H).

20

25

30

- 110 -

Step D: 4-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 25, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.8-2.6 (m, H), 2.96 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 4.88 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.4 (m, 8H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₈H₂₉N₇O₂ 495; found 496 (M+H, 100%).

Example 27

2-Amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide, hydrochloride

Step A: 2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide

Prepared from 2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methylpropanoic acid and 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 25, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 12H), 1.44 (s, 3H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.5-3.0 (m, 3H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 5.10 (s, 1H), 6.97 (m, 1H), 7.20 (m, 3H), 8.45 (s, 1H).

- 111 -

Step B: 2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-(triphenyl-
methyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.42
(s,9H), 1.43 (s,3H), 1.47 (s,3H), 1.75 (m,1H),
2.2-2.7 (m,3H), 4.45 (m,1H), 4.71 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.10
(d,14Hz,1H), 6.9-7.5 (m,26H), 7.87 (m,1H).

10

Step C: 2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3-yl]-propanamide

15

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step B by the procedure described in Example 26, Step
C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.34 (s,6H), 1.40
(s,9H), 1.95 (m,1H), 2.44 (m,3H), 4.30 (m,1H), 4.77
(d,14Hz,1H), 5.26 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.9-7.7 (m,12H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₇N₇O₄ 595; found 596
(M+H, 40%).

20

25

Step D: 2-Amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-propanamide,
hydrochloride

30

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure
described in Example 25, Step D. ¹H-NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 1.50 (s,3H), 1.62 (s,3H), 2.2-2.7 (m,4H),

- 112 -

4.32 (m,1H), 4.85 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.17 (d,14Hz,1H),
6.9-7.7 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{28}H_{29}N_7O_2$
495; found 496 (M+H,100%).

5

Example 28

6-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetra-
zol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3-yl]-hexanamide, hydrochloride

10

Step A: 6-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide
Prepared from 6-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-

15

hexanoic acid and 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-
[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the
procedure described in Example 25, Step A. 1H NMR
(200 MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.2-1.7 (m,14H), 1.92 (m,2H), 2.16
(t,5Hz,2H), 2.5-3.1 (m,6H), 4.53 (m,2H), 6.54
(d,7Hz,1H), 6.96 (m,1H), 7.18 (m,3H), 8.00 (s,1H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{21}H_{31}N_3O_4$ 389; found 390
(M+H,18%).

20

Step B: 2-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide

25

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.1-1.9

30

- 113 -

(m,16H), 2.15 (t,5Hz,2H), 2.2-2.7 (m,3H), 3.07
(q,6Hz,2H), 4.49 (m,2H), 4.70 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.11
(d,14Hz,1H), 6.49 (d,8Hz,1H), 6.8-7.5 (m,26H), 7.86
(m,1H).

Step C: 2-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
hexanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step B by the procedure described in Example 26, Step
C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.1-1.7 (m,16H),
2.0-2.6 (m,5H), 2.98 (t,2H), 4.32 (m,1H), 4.81
(d,16Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,16Hz,1H), 6.95 (m,2H), 7.23
(m,6H), 7.52 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for
C₃₅H₄₁N₇O₄ 623; found 646 (M+Na,45%).

Step D: 2-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide,
hydrochloride

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure
described in Example 25, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 1.88 (m,2H), 1.63 (m,4H) 2.0-2.7 (m,6H),
2.90 (br s,2H), 4.31 (m,1H), 4.86 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.17
(d,14Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.22 (m,6H), 7.56
(m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₃N₇O₂ 523;
found 524 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 114 -

Example 29

5 1-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-cyclohexanecarboxamide, hydrochloride

10 Step A: 1-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-cyclohexanecarboxamide

Prepared from 1-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-cyclohexanecarboxylic acid and 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 25, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.1-2.2 (m, 19H), 2.00 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 4.55 (m, 1H), 6.9-7.2 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₂H₃₁N₃O₄ 401; found 402 (M+H, 40%).

20 Step B: 1-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-cyclohexanecarboxamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.1-2.1 (m, 19H), 2.20 (m, 4H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 4.67 (s, 1H), 4.72 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 5.06 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 6.8-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.86 (m, 1H).

30 Step C: 1-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-cyclohexanecarboxamide

- 115 -

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 26, Step C. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.2-1.9 (m, 19H), 2.00 (br s, 2H), 2.53 (m, 3H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.86 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.34 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.81 (br s, 1H), 7.0-7.5 (m, 8H), 7.60 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{41}\text{N}_7\text{O}_4$ 635; found 636 (M+H, 20%).

10 Step D: 1-Amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-cyclohexane-carboxamide, hydrochloride

15 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 25, Step D. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.6-2.4 (m, 8H), 2.28 (m, 4H), 2.62 (m, 2H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.96 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.0-7.5 (m, 8H), 7.64 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{33}\text{N}_7\text{O}_2$ 535; found 536 (M+H, 100%).

Example 30

25 2(S),6-Diamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide, dihydrochloride

30 Step A: 2(S),6-Di-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide

Prepared from $\text{N}_\alpha, \text{N}_\epsilon$ -di(t-butoxycarbonyl)-L-lysine and 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the procedure

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 116 -

described in Example 25, Step A. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.2-2.1 (m, 24H), 2.6-3.3 (m, 6H), 4.20 (m, 1H), 4.62 (m, 2H), 5.26 (m, 1H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 4H).
5 FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_4\text{O}_6$ 504; found 505 (M+H, 20%).

Step B: 2(S),6-Di-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-(triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
10 1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
15 Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.42 (s, 18H), 1.60 (m, 2H), 1.79 (m, 2H), 2.42 (m, 4H), 3.10 (m, 4H), 4.09 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.60 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 6.8-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.85 (m, 1H).

Step C: 2(S),6-Di-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
20 3-yl]-hexanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 26, Step
25 C. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.0-1.8 (m, 20H), 2.00 (m, 2H), 3.00 (m, 2H), 3.95 (m, 1H), 4.32 (m, 1H), 4.76 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.4 (m, 8H), 7.4-7.6 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{50}\text{N}_8\text{O}_6$
30 738; found 739 (M+H, 10%).

- 117 -

Step D: 2(S),6-diamino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-hexanamide,
5 dihydrochloride

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure
described in Example 25, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 1.3-2.0 (m,6H), 2.0-2.7 (m,4H), 2.95 (m,2H),
10 3.95 (m,1H), 4.37 (m,1H), 4.89 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.19
(dd;4,15Hz,1H), 6.9-7.4 (m,8H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₄N₈O₂ 538; found 539
(M+H,100%).

Example 31

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20 Step A: 7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-
2-one

Sodium azide 1.1g (16.92mmol) was added to a
mixture of 6.0mL of chloroform and 1.1mL of water at
25 0°C. Concentrated sulfuric acid (0.44mL) was added
dropwise and the mixture stirred at 0°C for two hours
then filtered. The chloroform layer containing
hydrazoic acid was added to a solution of 1.3g
(7.92mmol) of 6-fluoro-1-tetralone (prepared by the
30 method of Allinger and Jones, J. Org. Chem., 27,
70-76 (1962)) in 4.8mL of chloroform. Additional
sulfuric acid (2.16mL) was added dropwise with
stirring while maintaining the temperature below

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 118 -

40°C. The mixture was stirred at 40°C for two hours then at room temperature for 16 hours. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was added to ice; the resulting precipitate was extracted with methylene chloride (5x). The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered through a silica plug. Solvents were removed under vacuum to afford 162mg (0.92mmol, 11%) of the product. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 2.21 (m, 2H), 2.32 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 2.77 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 6.93 (m, 3H), 7.8 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₀H₁₀FO 179; found 180 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 3-iodo-7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one
7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (411mg, 2.3mmol) (Step A) dissolved in a mixture of 7.9mL of dry methylene chloride and 1.0mL of dry tetrahydrofuran was treated with 1.62mL (1.18g, 11.6mmol, 5eq) of triethylamine and the resulting solution cooled to -15°C. Iodotrimethylsilane (0.66mL, 932mg, 4.7mmol, 2eq) was added followed by 1.183g of iodine (4.7mmol, 2eq) added in small portions over 5 minutes. The mixture was warmed to room temperature over 5 minutes at which time 15mL of methylene chloride was added followed by 20mL of 10% aqueous sodium sulfite. The layers were separated and the organic layer washed with 10% sodium sulfite (3x20mL). The aqueous layer was further extracted with 20mL of methylene chloride. The combined extracts were washed with

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 119 -

brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The crude product was chromatographed on silica gel, eluting with methylene chloride/methanol (99:1) to afford 511mg (1.68mmol, 73%) of the product. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.70 (m, 3H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 4.62 (t, 9Hz, 1H), 6.95 (m, 3H), 7.86 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{FNO}$ 305; found 306 (M+H, 100%).

Step C: 3-Azido-7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

101mg (0.33mmol) of 3-iodo-7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Step B) was dissolved in 8.3mL of methylene chloride and 105mg (0.66mmol, 2eq) of tetramethylguanidinium azide was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours then water was added and the layers allowed to separate. The organic layer was removed, washed with water and brine, then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum to afford 66mg (0.30mmol, 90%) of the product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.28 (m, 1H), 2.45 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 3.86 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 7.0 (m, 3H), 8.15 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{FN}_4\text{O}$ 220; found 221 (M+H, 100%).

Step D: 3-Amino-7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

3-Azido-7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (3.36g, 15.3mmol) (Step C) dissolved in dry tetrahydrofuran was treated with 4.00g

- 120 -

(15.3mmol, 1eq) of triphenylphosphine and the resulting solution stirred at room temperature under nitrogen for 2 hours. Water (0.48mL, 2eq) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. Solvents were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by preparative HPLC on silica, eluting with methylene chloride/methanol (9:1) to afford 2.39g (12.3mmol, 81%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.87 (m,1H), 2.41 (m,1H), 2.6-2.9 (m,2H), 3.30 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 7.0 (m,3H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₀H₁₁FN₂O 194; found 195 (M+H,100%).

15 Step E: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid

A solution of 4.65g (17.5mmol) of methyl 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoate (Example 1, Step D) in 100mL absolute methanol at room temperature was treated with 3mL concentrated hydrochloric acid and hydrogenated at one atmosphere over 0.92g of 20% Pd(OH)₂/C. After 16 hours, an additional 0.4g of catalyst was added and hydrogenation continued for 8 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 50mL methylene chloride and treated with 6.0mL (5.7g, 26mmol, 1.5eq) di-t-butyl-dicarbonate followed by 7.3mL triethylamine (5.3g, 52mmol, 3eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 14 hours then diluted into 300mL of hexane/ethyl acetate (1:1) and washed with water (2x), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 121 -

magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by preparative HPLC on silica, eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (6:1),
5 afforded 3.40g (14.7mmol, 84%) of the intermediate BOC-methyl ester as a colorless liquid.

This intermediate (3.40g, 14.7mmol) in 5mL methanol at room temperature was treated with 11mL of 2.0N NaOH (22mmol, 1.5eq) and the resulting mixture
10 stirred at room temperature for 24 hours. The mixture was diluted with 15mL water and washed with hexane. The aqueous layer was removed, cooled to 0°, and acidified by dropwise addition of saturated aqueous potassium hydrogen sulfate to a pH of 2-3.
15 The mixture was extracted with ethet (6x25mL); the combined extracts washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue solidified upon standing to afford 3.11g (14.3mmol, 97%) of the product. ¹H
20 NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.39 (s, 6H), 1.44 (s, 9H), 2.72 (s, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₀H₁₉NO₄ 217; found 218 (M+H, 54%).

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-
25 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Step E) and the amine obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 1,
30 Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s, 6H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.45 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.56 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.60 (m, 1H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 2.91 (m, 1H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 5.16 (br s, 1H), 6.66 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.94

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 122 -

(m, 3H), 7.51 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{20}H_{28}FN_3O_4$ 393; found 394 (M+H, 42%).

5 Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
10 Step F and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.34 (s, 6H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.74 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.6 (m, 3H), 2.43 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.53 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.43 (m, 1H), 4.61
15 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.12 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.28 (br s, 1H), 6.6-6.9 (m, 3H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 22H), 7.84 (m, 1H).

Step H: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The intermediate obtained in Step G (360mg, 0.41mmol) was dissolved in 1mL of methanol and treated dropwise with 1mL of 9N HCl. The mixture was
25 stirred at room temperature for 16 hours then all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear
30 gradient; 60% methanol increased to 80% over 10 minutes) to afford 222mg (0.35mmol, 84%) of the title compound. 1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.7 (m, 5H), 4.40 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.30 (d, 15Hz, 1H),

- 123 -

7.0-7.3 (m,6H), 7.40 (m,1H), 7.60 (m,2H), 7.70 (m,2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{30}FN_7O_2$ 527; found 528 (M+H,100%).

5

EXAMPLE 32

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
10 1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 7-iodo-1-tetralone

4-(p-Iodophenyl)butyric acid (5.00g, 17.2mmol) was added to 48g of polyphosphoric acid and
15 the mixture heated at 95°-105°C for 1 hour, then stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was added to 500mL of ice/water and extracted with ether (3x200mL). The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate and the
20 solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with chloroform to yield 3.63g (13.4mmol, 77%) of the product. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.11 (m,2H), 2.62 (t,5Hz,2H), 2.90 (t,5Hz,2H), 6.99 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.74 (dd;2,8Hz;1H), 8.30 (d,2Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_9IO$ 272; found 273 (M+H,100%).

25

**Step B: 8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-
30 2-one**

Prepared from 7-iodo-1-tetralone by the procedure described in Example 31, Step A. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.32 (m,2H), 2.42 (m,2H), 2.85

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 124 -

(t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.44 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.56 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_{10}INO$ 287; found 288 (M+H, 100%).

5

Step C: 3,8-diiodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in

10

Example 31, Step B. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.56 (m, 4H), 4.48 (t, 6Hz, 1H), 6.80 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.22 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.32 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_9I_2NO$ 413; found 414 (M+H, 58%).

15

Step D: 3-Azido-8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3,8-diiodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in

20

Example 31, Step C. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.3-3.2 (m, 4H), 3.99 (m, 1H), 7.10 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.58 (m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_9IN_4O$ 328; found 329 (M+H, 100%).

25

Step E: 3-Amino-8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-azido-8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure

30

described in Example 31, Step D. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.92 (m, 1H), 2.56 (m, 2H), 2.82 (m, 1H), 3.40 (m, 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.32 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.45 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.60 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_{11}IN_2O$ 302; found 303 (M+H, 62%).

- 125 -

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

5 Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.80(m,1H), 2.24 (m,2H), 2.50 (m,3H), 4.45 (m,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.35 (d,2Hz,1H), 7.43 (dd;2,8Hz;1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₀H₂₈IN₃O₄ 501; found 502 (M+H,20%).

Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

15 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step F and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.70 (m,1H), 2.22 (m,2H), 2.48 (m,3H), 4.40 (m,1H), 4.39 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.28 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.74 (m,2H), 6.8-7.6 (m,23H), 7.88 (m,1H).

Step H: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

30 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step G by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 126 -

CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H), 2.04 (m,1H),
2.1-2.6 (m,3H), 2.50 (d,4Hz,2H), 4.30 (m,1H), 4.76
(d,14Hz,1H), 5.24 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.96 (m,3H), 7.15
5 (m,2H), 7.60 (m,6H). FAB-MS: calculated for
C₂₉H₃₀IN₇O₂ 635; found 636 (M+H,100%).

Example 33

10 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoro-
acetate

15 Step A: 8-Methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benza-
zepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-methoxy-1-tetralone by the
procedure described in Example 31, Step A. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.19 (m,2H), 2.32 (m,2H), 2.70
20 (t,6Hz,2H), 3.76 (s,3H), 6.57 (d,2Hz, 1H), 6.66
(dd;2,8Hz;1H), 7.09 (d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated
for C₁₁H₁₃NO₂ 191; found 192 (M+H,100%).

25 Step B: 3-Iodo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-
benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in
Example 31, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.6-3.1
(m,4H), 3.88 (s,3H), 4.76 (t,6Hz,1H), 6.68
30 (d,2Hz,1H), 6.81 (dd;2,8Hz;1H), 7.20 (d,2Hz,1H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₂INO₂ 317; found 318
(M+H.44%).

- 127 -

Step C: 3-Azido-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-iodo-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.3-3.2 (m, 4H), 3.90 (s, 3H), 4.01 (m, 1H), 6.74 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 6.82 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.22 (d, 8Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₂N₄O₂ 232; found 233 (M+H, 100%).

Step D: 3-Amino-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-azido-8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.02 (m, 1H), 2.68 (m, 2H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 3.59 (m, 1H), 3.92 (s, 3H), 6.74 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 6.82 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.22 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 8.25 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₄N₂O₂ 206; found 207 (M+H, 40%).

Step E: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.44 (s, 6H), 1.50 (s, 9H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 2.80 (m, 5H), 3.86 (s, 3H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 6.62 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 6.76 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.20 (d, 8Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₁H₃₁N₃O₅ 405; found 406 (M+H, 42%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 128 -

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.47 (s,6H), 1.55 (s,9H), 1.80 (m,1H), 2.42 (m,2H), 2.60 (m,3H), 3.84 (s,3H), 4.62 (m,1H), 4.78 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.30 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.79 (m,2H), 7.08 (m,12H), 7.42 (m,11H), 7.98 (m,1H).

Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step F by the procedure described in Example 2, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.42 (s,6H), 1.50 (s,9H), 2.10 (m,1H), 2.56 (m,5H), 3.82 (s,3H), 4.43 (m,1H), 4.92 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.31 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.86 (m,1H), 6.97 (m,2H), 7.0-7.3 (m,4H), 7.64 (m,3H), 8.05 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₅H₄₁N₇O₅ 639; found 640 (M+H,20%).

Step H: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

- 129 -

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step G by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.43 (s,3H), 1.49 (s,3H), 2.15 (m,1H), 2.2-2.7 (m,5H), 3.85 (s,3H), 4.48 (m,1H), 5.04 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.28 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.92 (m,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,4H), 7.65 (m,5H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₃N₇O₃ 539; found 540 (M+H,100%).

Example 34

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

Step A: 3-(Trifluoromethyl)phenethyl tosylate

A solution of 10.0g (52.6mmol) of 3-(trifluoromethyl)phenethyl alcohol in 75mL of ether under nitrogen was treated with 10.53g (55.2mmol, 1.05eq) p-toluenesulfonyl chloride. The solution was cooled to 0° and treated with 7.67mL (5.57g, 55.0mmol, 1.05eq) of triethylamine. The mixture was stirred at 0° for 30 minutes then warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The precipitate was removed by filtration and washed with ether. The combined filtrate and ether wash were evaporated under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in ethyl acetate and washed with 0.5N HCl and brine; the organic layer was removed, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. Purification by flash chromatography on silica,

- 130 -

eluting with 30% ethyl acetate/hexane, afforded
15.14g (44.0mmol, 84%) of the product. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.44 (s,3H), 3.03 (t,7Hz,2H), 4.26
(t,7Hz,2H), 7.2-7.5 (m,6H), 7.66 (d,8Hz,2H).
5 FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₆H₁₅F₃SO₃ 344; found 345
(M+H,8%).

Step B: 2-[2-(3-Trifluoromethylphenyl)-ethyl]propane-
10 1,3-dioic acid, dimethyl ester

A suspension of 1.4g of 60% sodium hydride
oil dispersion (0.84g, 35mmol, 1.1eq) in 30mL of
tetrahydrofuran at room temperature under nitrogen
was treated dropwise over 15 minutes with a solution
15 of 4.0mL of dimethyl malonate (4.62g, 35mmol, 1.1eq)
in 30mL of tetrahydrofuran. After evolution of
hydrogen ceased, a solution of 11.03g (32.0mmol,
1.0eq) of 3-(trifluoromethyl)phenethyl tosylate (Step
A) in 30mL of tetrahydrofuran was added over 15
20 minutes. The mixture was heated at reflux for a
total of 21 hours. The mixture was filtered; the
filtrate was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered
and concentrated under vacuum to afford 10.89g of
product which contained approximately 5% of unreacted
25 tosylate and was used without purification. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.24 (m,2H), 2.70 (t,8Hz,2H), 3.37
(t,8Hz,1H), 3.74 (s,6H), 7.3-7.5 (m,4H).

Step C: 4-(3-Trifluoromethylphenyl)-butanoic acid

30 The intermediate obtained in Step B (2.15g,
7.07mmol) was treated with 3.5mL of a 4.53M solution
of methanolic potassium hydroxide (15.9mmol, 2.2eq)
and the resulting mixture stirred at room temperature

- 131 -

for 72 hours. The mixture was concentrated under vacuum and the solid residue redissolved in 4mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid and heated at reflux for 3 hours. The mixture was cooled, then extracted with methylene chloride (3x6mL); the combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was suspended in 20mL of water and treated with 700mg (8.3mmol) of sodium bicarbonate. The solution was washed with ether (2x20mL); the aqueous phase was removed and acidified (pH 1-2) with 2N HCl. The mixture was extracted with methylene chloride and the combined extracts dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was treated with 30mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid and the mixture heated at reflux for 20 hours. All volatiles were removed under vacuum to afford 1.12g (4.82mmol, 68%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.98 (m, 2H), 2.40 (t, 8Hz, 2H), 2.74 (t, 8Hz, 2H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 4H).

Step D: 7-Trifluoromethyl-1-tetralone

Prepared from 4-(3-trifluoromethylphenyl)-butanoic acid by the procedure described in Example 32, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.16 (m, 2H), 2.69 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 3.01 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.5 (m, 2H), 8.12 (d, 8Hz, 1H). EI-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₉F₃O 214; found 214 (M⁺, 40%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 132 -

Step E: 7-Trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-trifluoromethyl-1-tetralone by the procedure described in Example 31, Step A.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.3 (m, 4H), 2.86 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 7.08 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.48 (m, 2H), 8.3 (br s, 1H).

FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₀F₃NO 229; found 230 (M+H, 100%).

Step F: 3-Iodo-7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step B.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.8 (m, 4H), 4.68 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.11 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.52 (m, 2H), 7.95 (br s, 1H).

FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₉F₃INO 355; found 356 (M+H, 100%).

Step G: 3-Azido-7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-iodo-7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step C.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.32 (m, 1H), 2.55 (m, 1H), 2.81 (m, 1H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.88 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 7.14 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.52 (m, 2H), 8.34 (br s, 1H).

FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₉F₃N₄O 270; found 271 (M+H, 100%).

Step H: 3-Amino-7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-azido-7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the

- 133 -

procedure described in Example 31, Step D. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.95 (m,1H), 2.46 (m,1H), 2.80 (m,2H), 3.35 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 7.15 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.63 (m,2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{11}\text{F}_3\text{N}_2\text{O}$ 244; found 245 (M+H,100%).

Step I: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-tri-fluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step H by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.34 (s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.98 (m,1H), 2.50 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.63 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.7-3.0 (m,3H), 4.50 (m,1H), 6.75 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.10 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.51 (br s,2H), 7.94 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{21}\text{H}_{28}\text{F}_3\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ 443; found 444 (M+H,74%).

Step J: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-tri-fluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step I and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.36 (s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.71 (m,1H), 2.4-2.6 (m,5H), 4.44 (m,1H), 4.75 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.11 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.19 (br s,1H), 6.64 (d,7Hz,1H), 6.9-7.1 (m,10H), 7.2-7.5 (m,15H), 7.88 (m,1H).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 134 -

Step K: 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

5

The intermediate prepared in Step J (436mg, 0.47mmol) was dissolved in 4mL of methanol and treated dropwise with 4mL of 9N HCl. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours then evaporated to dryness under vacuum. The dry solid was triturated with benzene (5x5mL) then with warm benzene (2x5mL) then dried to constant weight. Thus, 304mg (0.47mmol, 100%) of the title compound was obtained. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 2.1-2.8 (m,6H), 4.30 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.96 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.33 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.06 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.2-7.5 (m,3H), 7.5-7.7 (m,6H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₀F₃N₇O₂ 577; found 578 (M+H,100%).

15

Example 35

20

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25

Step A: 7-Amino-1-tetralone

30

7-Nitrotetralone (2.5g, 13mmol) was suspended in 50mL of methanol and complete dissolution achieved by the addition of 10mL of tetrahydrofuran. The solution was hydrogenated at room temperature and 20-30psi over 100mg of 10% Pd/C for 2 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite, washed with methanol and evaporated to dryness under vacuum to

- 135 -

afford 2.1g (13mmol, 100%) of the product. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.09 (m, 2H), 2.60 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.84 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 6.83 (m, 1H), 7.06 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.32 (d, 2Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{NO}$ 161; found 162 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 7-chloro-1-tetralone

7-Amino-1-tetralone (500mg, 3.1mmol) was suspended in 3mL of water and treated with 3mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid with stirring. The mixture was cooled in an ice bath and treated dropwise with vigorous stirring with a solution of 241mg of sodium nitrite in 1.5mL of water (3.5mmol, 1.1eq). The mixture was stirred at 0-5° for 15 minutes then added dropwise to a cold solution of 366mg of CuCl (3.7mmol, 1.2eq) in 6mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The mixture was stirred for 5 minutes at 0° and 1 hour at room temperature. The mixture was extracted with methylene chloride (3x15mL); the combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated to dryness under vacuum at room temperature to give 550mg (3.05mmol, 98%) of the product. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.16 (m, 2H), 2.67 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.95 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.22 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.44 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 8.01 (d, 2Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{ClO}$ 180; found 181 (M+H, 10%).

Step C: 8-Chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-chloro-1-tetralone by the procedure described in Example 31, Step A. ^1H NMR

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 136 -

(300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.23 (m, 2H), 2.37 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.80 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.1 (m, 3H), 9.08 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{ClNO}$ 195; found 195 (M^+ , 30%).

5

Step D: 3-Iodo-8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 31, Step

10

B. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.72 (m, 3H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 4.67 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.05 (s, 1H), 7.18 (s, 2H), 7.71 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{ClINO}$ 320; found 321 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$, 100%).

15

Step E: 3-Azido-8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 31, Step

20

C. ^1H NMR (300MHz, DMF-d_7): 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 2.76 (m, 2H), 4.01 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 7.10 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.16 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.30 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.95 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{ClN}_4\text{O}$ 236; found 237 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$, 100%).

25

Step F: 3-Amino-8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 31, Step

30

D. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.94 (m, 1H), 2.52 (m, 1H), 2.67 (m, 1H), 2.89 (m, 1H), 3.44 (m, 1H), 7.02 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.18 (m, 2), 7.70 (br s, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{ClN}_2\text{O}$ 210; found 211 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$, 84%).

- 137 -

Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

5 Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step F by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 1.35 (s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.95 (m,1H), 2.4-2.8 (m,5H),
10 4.51 (m,1H), 5.22 (br s,1H), 6.73 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.02 (s,1H), 7.14 (br s,2H), 8.21 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₀H₂₈ClN₃O₄ 409; found 410 (M+H,55%).

15 Step H: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

20 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step G and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K.

25 Step I: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-chloro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

30 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step H by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CD₃OD): 1.40 (s,3H), 1.43 (s,3H), 2.12 (m,1H), 2.3-2.7 (m,5H), 4.30 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.87 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.34 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.08 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.23 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.28 (s,2H), 7.45

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 138 -

(s,1H), 7.59 (t,8Hz,2H), 7.70 (m,2H). FAB-MS:
calculated for $C_{29}H_{30}ClN_7O_2$ 543; found 544
(M+H,43%).

5

Example 36

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
10 1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 7-Fluoro-1-tetralone

In a specially designed Kel-F reactor
(cylindrical shape 1.25"od x 3"h equipped with a
15 screw cap and N₂ inlet-outlet) was placed hydrogen
fluoride-pyridine 6:4 solution (10mL, prepared by
diluting commercially available hydrogen
fluoride-pyridine 7:3 solution with dry pyridine).
7-amino-tetralone (644mg, 4.0mmol), (Example 35, Step
20 A) was added under N₂ and the solution was cooled to
0°. Sodium nitrite (304mg, 4.4mol, 1.1eq) was added
in portions and the mixture was stirred for 30
minutes. The mixture was then heated at 90°C for 1
hour with stirring. The reaction mixture was
25 quenched with approx. 60mL of ice/water and the solid
that separated extracted with methylene chloride
(3x30mL). The combined extracts were washed with
water and brine, dried over magnesium sulfate,
filtered and evaporated to dryness under vacuum at
30 room temperature. Purification by flash chromatography
on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane
(5:95), afforded pure 7-fluoro-1-tetralone (367mg,
2.2mmol, 56%). ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 2.13 (m,2H),

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 139 -

2.65 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 2.94 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 2H),
7.69 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). EI-MS: calculated for $C_{10}H_9FO$
164; found 164 (M^+ , 71%).

5

Step B: 8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-
2-one

Prepared from 7-fluoro-1-tetralone by the
procedure described in Example 31, Step A. 1H NMR
10 (300MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.22 (m, 2H), 2.38 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.78
(t, 6Hz, 2H), 6.75 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 6.84 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H),
7.16 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 8.35 (br s, 1H).

15

Step C: 3-Iodo-8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-
benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step
B. 1H NMR (300MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.73 (m, 3H), 2.92
(m, 1H), 4.68 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 6.79 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 6.90
20 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.18 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 8.14 (br s, 1H).

25

Step D: 3-Azido-8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-
benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step C by the procedure described in Example 31, Step
C. 1H NMR (300MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.51 (m, 1H),
2.74 (m, 1H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 3.88 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 6.80
(dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 6.89 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.21 (t, 8Hz, 1H),
8.10 (br s, 1H).

30

Step E: 3-Amino-8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-
benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 140 -

Step D by the procedure described in Example 31, Step D. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.92 (m,1H), 2.52 (m,1H), 2.65 (m,1H), 2.86 (m,1H), 3.45 (m,1H), 6.78 (dd;2,8Hz;1H), 6.87 (dt;2,8Hz;1H), 7.20 (t,8Hz,1H), 8.56 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{FN}_2\text{O}$ 194; found 195 (M+H,100%).

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.35 (s,6H), 1.41 (s,9H), 1.93 (m,1H), 2.4-2.9 (m,5H), 4.54 (m,1H), 5.19 (br s,1H), 6.73 (m,2H), 6.88 (dt;2,8Hz;1H), 7.19 (dd;6,8Hz;1H), 8.07 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{20}\text{H}_{28}\text{FN}_3\text{O}_4$ 393; found 394 (M+H,56%).

Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step F and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.36 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H), 1.42 (s,9H), 1.75 (m,1H), 2.3-2.6 (m,5H), 4.5 (m,2H), 5.25 (m,2H), 6.64 (d,7Hz,1H), 6.8-7.1 (m,11H), 7.2-7.5 (m,13H), 7.85 (m,1H).

- 141 -

Step H: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[8-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step G by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.7 (m, 5H), 4.41 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.88 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.34 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.0-7.2 (m, 3H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 5H), 7.5-7.8 (m, 3H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{30}\text{FN}_7\text{O}_2$ 527; found 528 (M^+ , 100%).

10

Example 37

15

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20

Step A: 4-(2-Fluorophenyl)butyric acid

Prepared from 4-(2-aminophenyl)butyric acid by the procedure described in Example 36, Step A. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.95 (m, 2H), 2.39 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 2.70 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 6.9-7.3 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{11}\text{FO}_2$ 182; found 182 (M^+ , 75%).

25

Step B: 5-Fluoro-1-tetralone

Prepared from 4-(2-fluorophenyl)butyric acid by the procedure described in Example 32, Step A. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.10 (m, 2H), 2.60 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 2.88 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 2H), 7.78 (d, 8Hz, 1H). EI-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_9\text{FO}$ 164; found 164 (M^+ , 44%).

30

- 142 -

Step C: 6-Fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

5 Prepared from 5-fluoro-1-tetralone by the procedure described in Example 31, Step A. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.26 (m, 2H), 2.40 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.88 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 6.83 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.94 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.20 (m, 1H), 7.75 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{FNO}$ 179; found 180 (M+H, 100%).

10 Step D: 3-Iodo-6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

15 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 31, Step B. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 2.7-2.9 (m, 3H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 4.68 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 6.81 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.94 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.20 (m, 1H), 7.83 (br s, 1H).

20 Step E: 3-Azido-6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

25 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 31, Step C. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.2-2.8 (m, 4H), 3.88 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 6.85 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.95 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.22 (m, 1H), 7.27 (br s, 1H).

30 Step F: 3-Amino-6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 31, Step D. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 2.22 (m, 1H), 2.60 (m, 2H), 3.21 (m, 1H), 3.85 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 6.91 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.02 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 1H). FAB-MS:

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 143 -

calculated for $C_{10}H_{11}FN_2O$ 194; found 195
(M+H, 100%).

5 Step G: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-
yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the
10 amine obtained in Step F by the procedure described
in Example 1, Step F. 1H NMR (300MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.36
(s, 6H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.8 (m, 3H),
3.18 (m, 2H), 4.54 (m, 1H), 5.18 (br s, 1H), 6.66
(d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.81 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.94 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.18
15 (m, 1H), 7.71 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $C_{20}H_{28}FN_3O_4$ 393; found 394 (M+H, 26%).

Step H: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenyl-
20 methyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step G and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
25 Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (300MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.38
(s, 6H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.81 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H),
2.4-2.7 (m, 3H), 2.89 (dd; 7, 14Hz; 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H),
4.77 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.09 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.29 (br s, 1H),
6.67 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.2 (m, 12H), 7.2-7.5 (m, 13H),
30 7.85 (m, 1H).

- 144 -

Step I: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
butanamide, trifluoroacetate

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step H by the procedure described in Example 31, Step
H. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.36
(s,3H), 2.0-2.3 (m,3H), 2.40 (br s,2H), 3.00 (m,1H),
4.35 (m,1H), 4.87 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.20 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.00
(m,3H), 7.1-7.4 (m,4H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS:
calculated for $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{30}\text{FN}_7\text{O}_2$ 527; found 528
(M+H,100%).

10

EXAMPLE 38

15

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazocin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20

Step A: 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,-
4,5,6-hexahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazocin-3-yl]-
butanamide

25

3-Azido-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-benzazocin-
2(1H)-one prepared by the method of Watthey, et al.,
J. Med. Chem., 28, 1511-1516 (1985)) was reduced to
3-amino-3,4,5,6-tetrahydro-1-benzazocin-2(1H)-one by
the procedure described in Example 1, Step A, then
coupled with 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-
butanoic acid (Example 1, Step E) by the procedure
described in Example 1, Step F. ^1H NMR (200MHz,
 CDCl_3): 1.36 (s,6H), 1.75 (m,3H), 2.08 (m,1H), 2.47
(m,3H), 2.80(m,1H), 4.13 (m,1H), 5.12 (s,2H), 5.79

30

- 145 -

(s,1H), 6.86 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.0-7.4 (m,8H), 7.90 (s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{24}H_{29}N_3O_4$ 423; found 424 (M+H,100%).

5

Step B: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl-1H-1-benzazocin-3-yl]-butanamide

10

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.42 (s,6H), 1.72 (m,4H), 2.42 (m,4H), 4.16 (m,1H), 4.49 (d,13Hz,1H), 5.10 (s,2H), 5.30 (d,13Hz,1H), 5.79 (s,1H), 6.80 (d,6Hz,2H), 6.9-7.6 (m,32H), 7.86 (m,1H).

15

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4,5,6-hexahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazocin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 1, Step L. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.28 (s,3H), 1.32 (s,3H), 1.44 (m,1H), 1.75 (m,3H), 2.05 (m,1H), 2.48 (m,3H), 4.00 (m,1H), 4.64 (d,13Hz,1H), 5.19 (d,13Hz,1H), 6.9-7.4 (m,8H), 7.4-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{30}H_{33}N_7O_2$ 523; found 524 (M+H,100%).

25

30

- 146 -

Example 39

5 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-quinolin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10 Step A: 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-quinolin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared as in Example 1, Step F from 3-amino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolin-2-one (prepared by the method of Davis, et al; Arch. Biochem. Biophys., 102, 48 (1963)) and 3-benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 1, Step E). ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.42 (s,6H), 2.68 (s,2H), 2.86 (t,13Hz,1H), 3.00 (m,1H), 4.67 (m,1H), 5.00 (s,2H), 6.9-7.3 (m,9H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₂H₂₅N₃O₄ 395; found 396 (M+1,100%).

20 Step B: 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-quinolin-3-yl]-butanamide

25 Prepared from 3-benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-quinolin-3-yl]-butanamide and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.41 (s,6H), 2.66 (s,2H), 2.85 (t,11Hz,1H), 3.11 (m,1H), 4.15 (m,1H), 4.97 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.30 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.7-7.6, (m,26H), 7.80 (m,1H).

30

- 147 -

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-quinolin-3-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure
described in Example 1, Step L. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 1.50 (s,3H), 1.52 (s,3H), 2.66 (m,2H), 3.16
(m,2H), 4.84 (m,1H), 5.17 (d,11Hz,1H), 5.39
(d,11Hz,1H), 7.0-7.4 (m,8H), 7.57 (m,4H). FAB-MS:
calculated for C₂₈H₂₉N₇O₂ 495; found 496
(M+H,100%).

Example 40

3-Benzylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(
1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate
(Example 1) and benzaldehyde by the procedure
described in Example 18. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD):
1.42 (s,3H), 1.46 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,4H), 2.69 (br
s,2H), 4.12 (s,2H), 4.37 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.90
(d,15Hz,1H), 5.18 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.1-7.7 (m,15H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₇N₇O₂
599; found 600 (M+H,100%).

- 148 -

Example 41

5 3-Isobutylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and isobutyraldehyde by the procedure described in Example 18. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.99 (d, 8Hz, 3H), 1.00 (d, 8Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.8-2.6 (m, 7H), 2.81 (d, 7Hz, 2H), 4.32 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.92 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.14 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₂ 565; found 566 (M+H, 100%).

20 Example 42

3-Propylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25 The title compound was prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and propionaldehyde by the procedure described in Example 18. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.97 (t, 8Hz, 3H), 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 1.65 (m, 2H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 8H), 2.93 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 4.33 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.89 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H),

- 149 -

6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.65 (m, 4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{32}H_{37}N_7O_2$ 551; found 552
(M+H, 73%).

5

Example 43

3-(Cyclopropylmethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-
10 4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
15 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate
(Example 1) and cyclopropanecarboxaldehyde by the
procedure described in Example 18. 1H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 0.37 (m, 2H), 0.65 (m, 2H), 1.00 (m, 1H), 1.34
(s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H), 2.88 (d, 7Hz, 2H),
20 4.33 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.89 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.01 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 6H),
7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $C_{33}H_{37}N_7O_2$ 563; found 564 (M+H, 100%).

25

Example 44

3-(Cyclohexylmethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
30 trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 150 -

benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide trifluoroacetate
(Example 1) and cyclohexanecarboxaldehyde by the
procedure described in Example 18. ¹H NMR (200MHz,
CD₃OD): 0.8-1.4 (m,6H), 1.33 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H),
1.5-1.9 (m,5H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 2.80 (d,7Hz,2H), 4.32
(dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.92 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.14 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.10-7.35 (m,6H), 7.45-7.70 (m,4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₄₃N₇O₂ 605; found 606
(M+H,100%).

Example 45

3-(4-hydroxybenzyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-(4-benzyloxybenzyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,-
4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-
azepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-bi-
phenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and 4-benzyloxy-
benzaldehyde by the procedure described in Example
18. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.35
(s,3H), 2.0-2.7 (m,6H), 4.10 (s,2H), 4.36
(dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.91 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.02 (s,2H), 5.09
(d,15Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,6H), 7.1-7.6 (m,15H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₃H₄₃N₇O₃ 705; found 706
(M+H,100%).

- 151 -

Step B: 3-(4-Hydroxybenzyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

5

The intermediate obtained in Step A (14.6mg, 0.018mmol) dissolved in 1.5mL of methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and one atmosphere over 10mg of 10% Pd/C for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase HPLC on C-18 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol increased to 75% methanol over 10 minutes) to afford 8.1mg (0.011mmol, 62%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.40 (s,3H), 1.44 (s,3H), 2.0-2.7 (m,6H), 4.08 (s,2H), 4.36 (m,1H), 4.87 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.20 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.78 (d,8Hz,2H), 6.96 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.7 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₇N₇O₃ 615; found 616 (M+H,46%).

10

15

20

Example 46

25

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

30

Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3(S)-amino-3,4-dihydro-1,5-benzothiazepin-4(5H)-one (prepared from D-cysteine

- 152 -

(S-cysteine) by the method of Slade, et al, J. Med. Chem., 28, 1517-1521 (1985)) and 3-t-butoxycarbonyl-amino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,6H), 1.45 (s,9H), 2.32 (d,10Hz,1H), 2.50 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.70 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.92 (t,11Hz,1H), 3.93 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.76 (m,1H), 7.02 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.1-7.3 (m,2H), 7.40 (t,8Hz,1H), 7.66 (d,7Hz,1H), 8.23 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₉H₂₇N₃O₄S 393; found 394 (M+H,36%).

Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,6H), 1.39 (s,9H), 2.26 (d,7Hz,1H), 2.47 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.63 (d,14Hz,1H), 3.01 (t,11Hz,1H), 3.60 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.76 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 5.05 (br s,2H), 6.9-7.6 (m,26H), 7.80 (m,1H). FAB-MS (Li⁺ spike): calculated for C₅₂H₅₁N₇O₄S 870; found 876 (M+Li,100%).

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure

- 153 -

described in Example 31, Step H. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.38 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,3H), 2.55 (br s,2H), 3.09 (t,11Hz,1H), 3.64 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.65 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 5.07 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.24 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.06 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.3-7.7 (m,10H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{29}\text{N}_7\text{O}_2\text{S}$ 527; found 528 (M+H,100%).

10

Example 47

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,1,4-trioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

15

Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,1,4-trioxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

20

To a solution of 88mg (0.22mmol) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide (Example 46, Step A) in 2mL of dry methylene chloride under nitrogen was added 38mg of solid sodium bicarbonate (0.44mmol, 2eq) followed by 106mg of 80%

25

m-chloroperbenzoic acid (85mg mCPBA, 0.49mmol, 2.2eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours then concentrated under vacuum. The residue was chromatographed on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (7:3). The chromatographed material was redissolved in 50mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 1:1 saturated aqueous sodium chloride/saturated aqueous potassium carbonate, then brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and

30

- 154 -

evaporated under vacuum to afford 86mg (0.20mmol, 91%) of the product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.36 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 1.45 (s,9H), 2.51 (d,13Hz,1H), 2.83 (d,13Hz,1H), 3.58 (dd;12,14Hz;1H), 4.33 (dd;8,14Hz;1H), 4.90 (m,2H), 7.30 (m,2H), 7.46 (t,8Hz,1H), 7.70 (t,8Hz,1H), 8.07 (d,8Hz,1H), 8.70 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{19}\text{H}_{27}\text{N}_3\text{O}_6\text{S}$ 425; found 426 (M+H,32%).

Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,1,4-trioxo-5-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H), 1.47 (s,9H), 2.45 (d,13Hz,1H), 2.81 (d,13Hz,1H), 3.40 (dd;11,14Hz,1H), 4.18 (m,3H), 4.80 (m,2H), 5.65 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.9-7.6 (m,25H), 7.95 (m,2H). FAB-MS (Li^+ spike): calculated for $\text{C}_{52}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_7\text{O}_6\text{S}$ 902; found 909 (M+Li,100%).

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,1,4-trioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.32 (br s,6H), 2.51 (br s,2H), 3.64 (dd;12,14Hz,1H), 3.98 (dd;8,14;1H), 4.54

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 155 -

(d,16Hz,1H), 4.78 (m,1H), 5.43 (d,16Hz,1H), 7.08
(d,8Hz,2H), 7.30 (m,3H), 7.5-7.8 (m,6H), 8.00
(d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₈H₂₉N₇O₄S
559; found 560 (M+H,100%).

Example 48

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzo-
thiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
[diastereomer A]

Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-di-
hydro-1,4-dioxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-
butanamide, diastereomers A and B

A solution of 179mg (0.46mmol) of 3-t-butoxy-
carbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzo-
thiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide (Example 46, Step A) in
4.5mL of methanol/water (5:1) was treated with 102mg
(0.48mmol, 1.05eq) of sodium periodate and stirred at
room temperature for 48 hours. The reaction mixture
was filtered and the filtrate concentrated under
vacuum. The residue was redissolved in chloroform,
dried over potassium carbonate, filtered and
concentrated under vacuum. Purification by flash
chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate,
afforded 47mg (0.12mmol, 25%) of the less polar,
minor diastereomer A in addition to 105mg (0.26mmol,
56%) of the more polar, major diastereomer B.

¹H NMR (diastereomer A; 200MHz, CDCl₃):
1.37 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 1.45 (s,9H), 2.51
(d,13Hz,1H), 2.79 (d,13Hz,1H), 3.80 (m,2H), 4.78

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 156 -

(m,1H); 4.95 (br s,1H), 7.14 (m,2H), 7.59 (m,2H),
7.93 (m,1H), 8.18 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $C_{19}H_{27}N_3O_5S$ 409; found 410 (M+H,29%).

5

Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-di-
hydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide,
diastereomer A

10

Prepared from diastereomer A obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.35
(s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 1.44 (s,9H), 2.45 (d,13Hz,1H),
2.72 (d,13Hz,1H), 3.61 (m,2H), 4.63 (m,1H), 4.86
(m,2H), 6.9-7.6 (m,25H), 7.81 (m,1H), 7.90 (m,1H).
FAB-MS (Li^+ spike): calculated for $C_{52}H_{51}N_7O_5S$
886; found 893 (M+Li,95%).

15

20

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butan-
amide, trifluoroacetate, diastereomer A

25

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure
described in Example 31, Step H. 1H NMR (200MHz,
 CD_3OD): 1.32 (br s,6H), 2.51 (br s,2H), 3.32
(dd;8,11Hz;1H), 3.95 (t,11Hz,1H), 4.55
(dd;8,11Hz;1H), 4.85 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.01 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.17 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.4-7.8 (m,8H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{28}H_{29}N_7O_3S$ 543; found 544
(M+H,100%).

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 157 -

Example 49

5 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
[diastereomer B]

10 Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, diastereomer B

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide (Example 46, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 48, Step A. ¹H NMR (diastereomer B; 200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.37 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 1.44 (s,9H), 2.48 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.68 (d,14Hz,1H), 3.30 (dd;11,15Hz;1H), 4.14 (dd;8,15Hz;1H), 4.86 (m,1H), 7.1 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.25 (m,1H), 7.41 (m,1H), 7.55 (m,1H), 8.81 (br s,1H).
20 FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₉H₂₇N₃O₅S 409; found 410 (M+H,38%).

25 Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, diastereomer B

30 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,6H), 1.45 (s,9H), 2.50 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.72

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 158 -

(d, 14Hz, 1H), 3.10 (dd; 10, 15Hz; 1H), 4.05 (m, 2H), 4.85 (m, 1H), 5.08 (br s, 1H), 5.68 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.92 (m, 1H). FAB-MS (Li^+ spike):
5 calculated for $\text{C}_{52}\text{H}_{51}\text{N}_7\text{O}_5\text{S}$ 886; found 893 (M+Li, 64%).

10 Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate, [diastereomer B]

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.33 (br s, 6H), 2.53 (br s, 2H), 3.29 (dd; 11, 14Hz; 1H), 3.89 (dd; 7, 14; 1H), 4.48 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 4.82 (m, 1H), 5.33 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 7.0-7.7 (m, 12H).
15 FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{29}\text{N}_7\text{O}_3\text{S}$ 543; found 544 (M+H, 100%).

20

Example 50

25 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-4-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1,4-benzothiazin-2-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

Step A: 2-Amino-3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-1,4-benzothiazine

30 Anhydrous ammonia gas was bubbled for one hour through a suspension of 500mg (2.5mmol) of 2-chloro-3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-1,4-benzothiazine (prepared by the method of Worley, et al; J. Org. Chem., 40, 1731-1734 (1975)) in 5mL of methylene

- 159 -

chloride. The mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate evaporated under vacuum. The residue was triturated with 20mL of chloroform, filtered and the filtrate evaporated under vacuum. Purification by flash chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate, afforded 185mg (1.0mmol, 41%) of the product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.00 (br s, 2H), 4.68 (br s, 1H), 6.9-7.4 (m, 4H), 9.05 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_8\text{H}_8\text{N}_2\text{OS}$ 180; found 181 (M+H, 54%).

Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-1,4-benzothiazin-2-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 2-amino-3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-2H-1,4-benzothiazine (Step A) and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.26 (s, 6H), 1.36 (s, 9H), 2.47 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 2.57 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 5.52 (br s, 1H), 6.31 (br s, 1H), 7.00 (m, 2H), 7.22 (m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{18}\text{H}_{25}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4\text{S}$ 379; found 380 (M+H, 26%).

Step C: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-4-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1,4-benzothiazin-2-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.40

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 160 -

(s,6H), 1.42 (s,9H), 2.53 (d,14Hz,1H), 2.92
(d,14Hz,1H), 4.86 (d,16Hz,1H), 4.92 (d,8Hz,1H), 5.29
(d,16Hz,1H), 5.49 (d,8Hz,1H), 6.85-7.50 (m,26H), 7.92
(m,1H).

Step D: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-3-oxo-4-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-2H-1,4-benzothiazin-2-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.40 (s,6H), 2.62 (s,2H), 5.34 (s,2H), 5.73 (s,1H), 7.0-7.7 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₇H₂₇N₇O₂S 513; found 514 (M+H,100%).

Example 51

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[2-phenylethyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) and 3-benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 1, Step E) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,3H), 1.39 (s,3H), 1.82 (m,1H), 2.52 (s,2H), 2.5-3.0 (m,3H), 4.51 (m,1H), 5.07 (br s,2H), 5.58 (br s,1H), 6.68

- 161 -

(d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.96 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 8H), 7.62 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{23}H_{27}N_3O_4$ 409; found 410 (M+H, 100%).

5

Step B 3-Benzylloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[2-phenylethyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

10

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and 2-phenethyl bromide by the procedure described in Example 3, Step A. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.37 (s, 6H), 1.68 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 4H), 2.7-3.0 (m, 2H), 3.70 (m, 1H), 4.48 (m, 2H), 5.05 (s, 2H), 5.66 (s, 1H), 6.99 (m, 1H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 14H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{31}H_{35}N_3O_4$ 513; found 514 (M+H, 100%).

15

20

Step C 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[2-phenylethyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 3, Step B. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.4 (m, 1H), 2.58 (m, 3H), 2.85 (m, 2H), 3.90 (m, 1H), 4.58 (m, 1H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.0 (m, 1H), 5.15 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.0-7.5 (m, 9H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{23}H_{29}N_3O_2$ 379; found 380 (M+1, 100%).

30

Example 52

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[3-phenylpropyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

- 162 -

Step A 3-Benzylloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[3-phenylpropyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

5 Prepared from 3-benzylloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide (Example 51, Step A) and 3-phenylpropyl bromide by the procedure described in Example 3, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,6H), 1.82 (m,4H), 2.4-2.9 (m,7H), 3.45 (m,1H), 4.36 (m,1H), 10 5.02 (s,2H), 5.64 (s,1H), 6.69 (d,8Hz,1H), 6.9-7.4 (m,14H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₂H₃₇N₃O₄ 527; found 528 (M+H,100%).

15 Step B 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[3-phenylpropyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 3, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.21 (s,6H), 1.7-2.1 (m,2H), 2.1-2.4 (m,2H), 20 2.5-2.9 (m,6H), 3.46 (m,1H), 4.37 (m,2H), 6.9-7.3 (m,9H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₄H₃₁N₃O₂ 393; found 394 (M+1,100%).

25

Example 53

4-Amino-4-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-pentanamide, trifluoroacetate

30

Step A: 3-Amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one, hydrochloride

- 163 -

Prepared from 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the procedures described in Example 4, Steps A, B and C.

5 ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 2.17 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 3H), 3.80 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.78 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.38 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.95 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.17 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.28 (m, 2H), 7.38 (m, 2H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calc. for $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{22}\text{N}_6\text{O}$ 410; found 411 (M+H, 100%).

10

Step B: 4-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-methylpentanoic acid

Prepared from 2,2-dimethylglutaric acid by the procedures described in Example 1, Steps C, D and

15 E. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.29 (s, 6H), 2.02 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.34 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 7.34 (s, 5H), 10.5 (br s, 1H).

20

Step C: 4-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3-yl]-pentanamide

Prepared from the intermediates obtained in Steps A and B by the procedure described in Example

25 4, Step D. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.30 (s, 6H), 1.9-2.6 (m, 8H), 4.38 (m, 1H), 4.86 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 4.98 (s, 2H), 5.16 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 11H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_7\text{O}_4$ 657; found 658 (M+H, 20%).

30

Step D: 4-Amino-4-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-pentanamide, trifluoroacetate

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 164 -

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 1, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.29 (s,3H), 1.31 (s,3H), 1.8-2.6 (m,8H), 4.29 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.94 (d,13Hz,1H), 5.16 (d,13Hz,1H), 6.99 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.3 (m,6H), 7.4-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₃N₇O₂ 523; found 524 (M+H,100%)

Example 54

Piperidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benz-azepin-3-yl]-4-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: N-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)piperidine-4-carboxylic acid

To a suspension of 1.0g (7.74mmol) of piperidine-4-carboxylic acid in 20mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was added 1.13mL of triethylamine (0.82g, 8.1mmol, 1.05eq) followed by 1.87mL of di-t-butyl-dicarbonate (1.77g, 8.1mmol, 1.05eq). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 48 hours then concentrated under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in ethyl acetate and the solution washed with 5% citric acid and brine, then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to afford 1.75g (7.63mmol, 98%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.42 (s,9H), 1.50 (m,2H), 1.84 (m,2H), 2.46 (m,1H), 2.86 (t,9Hz,2H), 3.91 (t,3Hz,1H), 3.98 (t,3Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₉NO₄ 229; found 230 (M+H,17%).

- 165 -

Step B: N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-piperidine-4-carboxamide

5

Prepared from N-(t-butoxycarbonyl)piperidine-4-carboxylic acid and 3-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride (Example 53, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 4, Step D.

10

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.4-2.9 (m, 11H), 4.05 (m, 3H), 4.30 (m, 1H), 4.81 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 6H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₅H₃₉N₇O₄ 621; found 622 (M+H, 7%).

15

Step C: Piperidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-4-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

20

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.7-2.7 (m, 8H), 3.00 (m, 3H), 3.38 (m, 2H), 4.31 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.86 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₁N₇O₂ 521; found 522 (M+H, 100%).

25

30

Example 55

Piperidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-3-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

- 166 -

The title compound was prepared from piperidine-3-carboxylic acid and 3-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride (Example 53, Step A) by the procedures described in Example 54. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.6-2.2 (m,5H), 2.28 (m,1H), 2.50 (m,2H), 2.79 (m,1H), 3.19 (m,4H), 4.30 (m,1H), 4.86 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.17 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.99 (m,4H), 7.20 (m,4H), 7.55 (m,3H), 8.38 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₁N₇O₂ 521; found 522 (M+H,100%).

Example 56

Quinuclidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-3-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound, as a mixture of four diastereomers, was prepared from racemic quinuclidine-3-carboxylic acid and 3-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride (Example 53, Step A) by the procedures described in Example 4, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.7-2.7 (m,8H), 3.0-3.7 (m,8H), 4.32 (m,1H), 4.8-5.2 (m,2H), 7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,6H), 7.4-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₂H₃₃N₇O₂ 547; found 531 (22%).

- 167 -

Example 57

5 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
 [[[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
 yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10 Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
 tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
 butanamide

15 Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-
 methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and 3(R)-
 amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one
 (Example 1, Step B) by the procedure described in
20 Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.37
 (s,6H), 1.44 (s,9H), 1.95 (m,1H), 2.46 (d,15Hz,1H),
 2.59 (d,15Hz,1H), 2.6-3.0, (m,3H), 4.53 (m,1H), 5.30
 (br s,1H), 6.72 (d,7Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.1-7.3
 (m,3H), 7.82 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for
20 C₂₀H₂₉N₃O₄ 375; found 376 (M+H,70%).

25 Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
 tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
 methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

25 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
 Step A and 4-chloromethylbiphenyl by the procedure
 described in Example 1, Step K. FAB-MS: calculated
 for C₃₃H₃₉N₃O₄ 541; found 542 (M+H,31%).

30 Step C: 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
 oxo-1-[[[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoro-
 acetate

- 168 -

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s,3H), 1.36 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 4.38 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.89 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.24 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.1-7.6 (m,13H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₈H₃₁N₃O₂ 441; found 442 (M+H,100%).

Example 58

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carboxy][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Step A: 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and 3-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 1.34 (s,6H), 1.41 (s,9H), 1.90 (m,1H), 2.45 (d,15Hz,1H), 2.56 (d,15Hz,1H), 2.65 (m,1H), 2.76 (m,1H), 2.92 (m,1H), 4.53 (m,1H), 5.20 (br s,1H), 6.62 (d,7Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.10-7.25 (m,3H), 7.35 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₀H₂₉N₃O₄ 375; found 376 (M+H,45%).

Step B: 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-t-butoxycarbonyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

- 169 -

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and t-butyl 4'-bromomethylbiphenyl-2-carboxylate (prepared by the method of D. J. Carini, et al, EPO publication 324,377) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 1.17 (s,9H), 1.34 (s,6H), 1.40 (s,9H), 1.86 (m,1H), 2.40-2.65 (m,5H), 4.51 (m,1H), 4.81 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.31 (s,1H), 5.35 (d,14Hz,1H), 6.68 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.1-7.5 (m,11H), 7.71 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₈H₄₇N₃O₆ 641; found 642 (M+H,15%).

Step C: 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carboxy][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

The intermediate obtained in Step B (500mg, 0.78mmol) dissolved in 2mL of glacial acetic acid was treated with 2mL of 6N HCl and the mixture heated at 50°C for 3 hours. The mixture was concentrated under vacuum to a minimum volume, redissolved in 3mL of distilled water and lyophilized. The crusty solid was redissolved in 2mL of methanol and treated dropwise with stirring with 5mL of propylene oxide. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours then filtered; the filter cake was washed with ether, air dried, then dried under vacuum to give 278mg (0.57mmol, 73%) of the title compound. ¹H NMR (300MHz, D₂O): 1.43 (s,3H), 1.47 (s,3H), 2.0-2.5 (m,4H), 2.66 (m,2H), 4.28 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.70 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.29 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.92 (m,1H), 7.0-7.4 (m,10H), 7.70 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₁N₃O₄ 485; found 486 (M+H,100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 170 -

Example 59

5 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

10 Step A: 7-Methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 6-methoxy-1-tetralone by the procedure described in Example 31, Step A. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.1-2.4 (m, 4H), 2.72 (t, 7Hz, 2H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 6.71 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 6.73 (s, 1H), 6.89 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.80 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{13}\text{NO}_2$ 191; found 191 (M^+ , 60%).

20 Step B: 3-Iodo-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step B. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.5-3.0 (m, 4H), 3.89 (s, 3H), 4.64 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 6.75 (s, 1H), 6.77 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.94 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.70 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{12}\text{INO}_2$ 317; found 317 (M^+ , 100%).

30 Step C: 3-Azido-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

3-Iodo-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (4.074g, 12.85mmol) and sodium azide (4.178g, 64.3mmol, 5eq.) were dissolved in 50mL of

- 171 -

dimethylformamide and heated with stirring at 60° for 2 hours. The solvent was evaporated under vacuum at room temperature and the residue redissolved in 150mL of ethyl acetate and washed with water (3x50mL) and brine (1x50mL). The organic layer was separated, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and evaporated to dryness under vacuum to yield 2.538g (10.94mmol, 85%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.2-2.7 (m, 3H), 2.90 (m, 1H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 6.75 (m, 2H), 6.95 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 8.22 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₂N₄O₂ 232; found 233 (M+H, 30%).

Step D: 3-Amino-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 3-azido-7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.86 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.6 (m, 2H), 2.86 (m, 1H), 3.39 (m, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H), 6.72 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 6.74 (s, 1H), 6.88 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.62 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₁H₁₄N₂O₂ 206; found 208 (100%).

Step E: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the amine obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.32 (s, 6H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.86 (m, 1H), 2.4-3.0 (m, 5H), 3.77 (s, 3H), 4.49 (m, 1H), 5.25 (br s, 1H), 6.68

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 172 -

(d,8Hz,1H), 6.70 (s,1H), 6.89 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.55 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{21}H_{31}N_3O_5$ 405; found 428 (M+Na,100%), 406 (M+H,23%).

5

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

10

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step G. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.31 (s,3H), 1.32 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,9H), 1.70 (m,1H), 2.2-2.6 (m,5H), 3.72 (s,3H), 4.43 (m,1H), 4.61 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.06 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.35 (br s,1H), 6.62 (m,3H), 6.9 (m,10H), 7.25 (m,12H), 7.83 (m,1H).

15

Step G: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

20

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step F by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.39 (s,3H), 2.05 (m,1H), 2.3-2.6 (m,5H), 3.81 (s,3H), 4.37 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.76 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.80 (d,3Hz,1H), 6.88 (dd;3,8Hz;1H), 7.01 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.17 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.22 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{30}H_{33}N_7O_3$ 539; found 540 (M+H,100%).

25

30

- 173 -

Example 60

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

240mg (0.27mmol) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide (Example 59, Step F) was dissolved in 4mL of methylene chloride and the solution treated with 1.35mL of 1.0M boron tribromide in methylene chloride (1.35mmol, 5eq.) and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 4 hours then quenched by the addition of 15mL of ice water. The mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate (2x20mL) and the combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed in vacuo. The residue was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C8, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (55:45). In this manner, 56mg (0.087mmol, 32%) of the title compound was obtained as a colorless glass. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 2.07 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 5H), 4.42 (dd; 5.8Hz; 1H), 4.79 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 5.24 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 6.68 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 6.78 (dd; 2.7Hz; 1H), 7.06 (d, 7Hz, 2H), 7.18 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.21 (d, 7Hz, 2H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₃ 525; found 526 (M+H, 87%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 174 -

Example 61

5 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-benzyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10 Step A: 3(R)-(Benzylamino)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A solution of 528mg (3.0mmol) of 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) in 45mL of absolute methanol at room temperature was treated with 4.5g of powdered 3A
15 molecular sieves followed by dropwise addition of a solution of 954mg (9.0mmol, 3eq.) of benzaldehyde in 15mL of methanol. The pH of the mixture was adjusted to 7 by addition of trifluoroacetic acid then stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. Sodium cyanoboro-
20 hydride (18mL of 1.0M THF solution; 18mmol, 6eq.) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 18 hours. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate treated with 3mL of trifluoroacetic acid with stirring for 3 hours, then all volatiles removed under vacuum
25 and the residue dissolved in 50mL of ethyl acetate. The ethyl acetate solution was washed with water (3x15mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (2x15mL) and 15mL of brine then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum.
30 The residue was purified by chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (70:30), to afford 410mg (1.54mmol, 51%) of the product. ¹H NMR

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 175 -

(200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.05 (m, 1H), 2.5-3.0 (m, 3H), 3.37 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 3.57 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 3.90 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 8H), 7.75 (br s, 1H).
5 FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₇H₁₈N₂O 266; found 267 (M+H, 75%).

Step B: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-benzyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-(R)-yl]-butanamide

10 A solution of 90mg (0.34mmol) of 3(R)-(benzylamino)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one in 1.5mL of tetrahydrofuran under nitrogen at room temperature was treated with 73mg (0.34mmol, 15 leq.) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) followed by 94mg (0.38mmol, 1.1eq.) of 2-ethoxy-1-ethoxycarbonyl-1,2-dihydro-quinoline (EEDQ). Most of the solvent was evaporated under a stream of nitrogen and the resulting reaction mixture (thick syrup approx. 0.3mL) was stirred for 3 20 days. The mixture was evaporated to dryness under vacuum and the residue purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (1:1) to afford 45mg (mmol, 33%) of product. 1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.28 (s, 3H), 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.35 (s, 9H), 2.16 (m, 2H), 2.35 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.58 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.60 (m, 1H), 2.81 (m, 1H), 4.70 (d, 18Hz, 1H), 4.99 (d, 18Hz, 1H), 5.37 (t, 10Hz, 1H), 5.83 (br s, 1H), 6.98 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.45 (m, 5H), 7.50-7.85 (m, 3H), 8.13 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 8.90 (m, 1H).
30 FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₇H₃₅N₃O₄ 465; found 466 (M+H, 48%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 176 -

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-benzyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

5 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the methods described in Example 1, Step K and Example 31, Step H. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃CN): 1.35 (s,3H),
10 1.36 (s,3H), 2.19 (m,1H), 2.38 (m,1H), 2.47 (d,17Hz,1H), 2.7-2.9 (m,2H), 2.90 (d,17Hz,1H), 4.75 (d,16Hz,1H), 4.93 (d,19Hz,1H), 5.03 (d,19Hz,1H), 5.22 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 5.48 (d,16Hz,1H), 7.2-7.5 (m,10H),
15 7.6-7.8 (m,6H), 7.85 (br s,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₇N₇O₂ 599; found 600 (M+H,30%).

Example 62

20 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25 Step A: 3(R)-N-Methyl-N-benzylamino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

30 A solution of 150mg (0.56mmol) of 3(R)-(benzylamino)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 61, Step A) in 0.6mL of formic acid was treated with 0.047mL (0.56mmol, 1eq.) of 36% aqueous formaldehyde and the mixture heated at 80° with stirring for 24 hours. The mixture was cooled,

- 177 -

treated with 0.8mL of 6N HCl, and all volatiles removed under vacuum. The residue was partitioned between 10mL of water and 10mL of methylene chloride; 1mL of 10% aqueous sodium carbonate was then added and the mixture shaken. The organic layer was separated and the aqueous layer extracted with an additional 20mL of methylene chloride. The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with 2.5% methanol in ethyl acetate, to give 98mg (0.35mmol, 63%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.35 (s, 3H), 2.35 (m, 2H), 2.69 (m, 1H), 2.88 (m, 1H), 3.37 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 3.80 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 3.90 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.90 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.35 (m, 8H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₈H₂₀N₂O 280; found 281 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 3(R)-(Methylamino)-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A solution of 98mg (0.35mmol) of 3(R)-(N-methyl-N-benzyl)amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Step A) in 10mL of methanol was treated with one drop of concentrated sulfuric acid and the resulting solution hydrogenated at room temperature and 30-40psi over 20mg of 10% Pd/C for 20 hours. The mixture was filtered and the filtrate evaporated under vacuum. The residue was treated with 15mL of ethyl acetate, 4mL of water and 2mL of 10% aqueous sodium carbonate then shaken. The organic layer was separated, and the aqueous phase

- 178 -

re-extracted with an additional 10mL of ethyl acetate. The combined extracts were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate evaporated under vacuum to give 68mg
5 (0.35mmol, 100%) of product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.30 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.65 (m, 2H), 2.73 (m, 1H), 3.10 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 3H), 7.5 (br s, 1H).

10 Step C: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-(R)-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) and the
15 amine obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.30 (br s, 15H), 2.19 (m, 1H), 2.42 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.8 (m, 3H), 2.91 (m, 1H), 3.15 (s, 3H), 5.32 (dd; 6, 8Hz; 1H), 5.52 (br s, 1H), 6.97 (d, 5Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 3H), 7.35 (br
20 s, 1H).

Step D: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedures described in Example 1, Step K and Example 31 Step H. ^1H NMR
30 (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.8 (m, 5H), 3.16 (s, 3H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.01

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 179 -

(dd;7,11Hz;1H), 5.13 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.02 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.19 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.2-7.4 (m,4H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{30}H_{33}N_7O_2$ 523; found 524
(M+H,22%).

5

Example 63

2-Amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
10 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-propanamide

15

Prepared from 2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-2-
methylpropanoic acid and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) by
the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. 1H NMR
(200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.42 (s,12H), 1.46 (s,3H), 1.90
20 (m,1H), 2.5-3.0 (m,3H), 4.48 (m,1H), 5.01 (br s,1H),
6.97 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.1-7.3 (m,3H), 7.9 (br s,1H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{19}H_{27}N_3O_4$ 361; found 362
(M+H,30%).

25

Step B: 2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[N-
(triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-propanamide

30

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-

- 180 -

biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.42 (s, 9H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 1.46 (s, 3H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 3H), 4.43 (m, 1H), 4.72 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.93 (br s, 1H), 5.09 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 26H), 7.86 (m, 1H).

Step C: 2-Amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H with final purification performed by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (55:45). ^1H -NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.61 (s, 3H), 2.1-2.6 (m, 4H), 4.33 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.15 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 4H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{28}\text{H}_{29}\text{N}_7\text{O}_2$ 495; found 496 (M+H, 32%).

Example 64

Quinuclidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-3-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound, as a mixture of two diastereomers, was prepared from racemic quinuclidine-3-carboxylic acid and 3(R)-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-

- 181 -

2H-1-benzazepin-2-one hydrochloride (Example 4, Step C) by the procedure described in Example 4, Step D, with final purification by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8, eluting with acetonitrile/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (35:65). ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.7-2.6 (m, 8H), 3.00 (m, 1H), 3.1-3.3 (m, 6H), 3.65 (m, 1H), 4.32 (m, 1H), 4.8-5.2 (m, 2H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₂H₃₃N₇O₂ 547; found 548 (M+H, 100%).

Example 65

3-Amino-2,2-dimethyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-(Benzyloxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid

Prepared from 3-[benzyloxycarbonylamino]-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid, methyl ester (Example 1, Step D) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step E. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.25 (s, 6H), 3.30 (d, 7Hz, 2H), 5.10 (s, 2H), 7.34 (s, 5H).

Step B: 3-(Benzyloxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

Prepared from 3-(benzyloxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethylpropanoic acid and 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-[1]benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.19 (s, 6H), 1.90 (m, 1H),

- 182 -

2.6-3.0 (m, 3H), 3.26 (d, 6Hz, 2H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 5.07 (s, 2H), 5.7 (br t, 1H), 6.62 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 3H), 7.3 (s, 5H), 8.14 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{23}H_{27}N_3O_4$ 409; found 410 (M+H, 100%).

Step C: 3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

A solution of 170mg (0.42mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 5mL of absolute methanol and one drop of trifluoroacetic acid was hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere over 35mg of 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon for 4 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and solvent removed under vacuum to afford 165mg (0.42mmol, 100%) of the amine trifluoroacetate salt as a pale yellow solid.

The above intermediate was dissolved in 2mL of methylene chloride and treated with 108mg (0.49mmol, 1.2eq.) of di-t-butyl-dicarbonate followed by 0.12mL of triethylamine (87mg, 0.86mmol, 2eq.). After two hours at room temperature, the mixture was added to 20mL of ethyl acetate and washed with 5% aqueous citric acid, saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (3:2) to afford 156mg (0.41mmol, 98%) of the product as a white solid. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.18 (s, 6H),

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 183 -

1.39 (s,9H), 1.92 (m,1H), 2.6-3.0 (m,3H), 3.17
(d,6Hz,2H), 4.46 (m,1H), 5.25 (br s,1H), 6.69
(d,7Hz,1H), 6.98 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.1-7.3 (m,3H), 8.22 (br
s,1H). FAB-MS: calc. for $C_{20}H_{29}N_3O_4$ 375; found 376
(M+H,10%).

Step D: 3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-2,2-dimethyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-(tri-
phenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
propanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in
Step C and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-
biphen-4-yl)] tetrazole by the procedure described in
Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.16
(s,3H), 1.17 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,9H), 1.74 (m,1H),
2.3-2.5 (m,3H), 3.16 (d,7Hz,2H), 4.40 (m,1H), 4.62
(d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.28 (br s,1H), 6.68
(d,7Hz,1H), 6.9-7.5 (m,26H), 7.85 (m,1H).

Step E: 3-Amino-2,2-dimethyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-propanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step D by the procedure
described in Example 31, Step H with final
purification performed by reverse phase medium
pressure liquid chromatography on C-8, eluting with
methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (55:45).
 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.24 (s,3H), 1.33 (s,3H),
2.1-2.6 (m,4H), 2.99 (br s,2H), 4.30 (dd;8,11Hz;1H),

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 184 -

4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.4-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{31}N_7O_2$ 509; found 510 (M+H, 100%).

5

Example 66

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10

Step A: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

15

Prepared from 3(S)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) and 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methylbutanoic acid (Example 1, Step E) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{23}H_{27}N_3O_4$ 409; found 410 (M+H, 100%). $[\alpha]_D = -160^\circ$ (c=1, $CHCl_3$).

20

Step B: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

25

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-2-yl)tetrazole by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.67 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.5 (m, 5H), 4.44 (m, 1H),

30

- 185 -

4.67 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 5.12 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.63 (br s, 1H), 6.64 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.5 (m, 31H), 7.85 (m, 1H).

5 Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 1, Step L. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H), 4.34 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.86 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 6H), 15 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₂ 509; found 510 (M+H, 100%). [α]_D = -98° (c = .5, CH₃OH).

Example 67

20 3-(2-Fluoropropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25 To a cold (-78°C) solution of 3-(2-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide (Example 22, 20mg, 0.029mmol) in 1.5mL of hydrogen fluoride-pyridine under a nitrogen atmosphere, 0.2mL of DAST (diethylaminosulfur trifluoride) was slowly added. The 30 reaction mixture was brought to room temperature and stirred for 48 hours. Additional DAST (0.2mL) was added at 24 hour intervals until no further reaction

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 186 -

was detected by HPLC. The reaction mixture was repeatedly purified by reverse phase HPLC to afford 4mg of product. FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{32}H_{36}N_7O_2F$ 569; found 570 (M+H, 100%). The product was converted into its hydrochloride salt by repeated evaporation of an aqueous 6N HCl/methanol solution. ^{19}F NMR (CD_3OD): -75.4.

Example 68

10

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

15 Step A: 3-Nitro-4-phenyltoluene

To a cold (0°C) solution of 4-methyl-2-nitroaniline (3.8g) in 11mL of HBF_4 , an aqueous solution of sodium nitrite (1.7g in 3.4mL) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred for 10 minutes. The precipitate was collected and washed with cold aqueous HBF_4 (3mL), ethanol and ether to yield 1.72g of diazonium salt. The diazonium salt was suspended in benzene (76mL) and acetonitrile (7.6mL). Potassium acetate (1.53g) was added and the resulting mixture stirred under nitrogen in the dark at room temperature for 1.5 hr. The solid was removed by filtration and the filtrate washed with water (2x) and brine. The solution was dried with anhydrous sodium sulfate and then concentrated to afford 1.49g of crude product which could be chromatographed on silica gel (2:1 hexanes: CH_2Cl_2).

- 187 -

Step B: 3-Amino-4-phenyltoluene

A solution of 2.4g of 3-nitro-4-phenyltoluene in 25mL of methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi over 0.30g of 5% Pd/C catalyst.

5 The solution was filtered and the filtrate concentrated to give 1.98g of product. EI-MS: calculated for $C_{13}H_{13}N$: 183; found 183.

Step C: 3-Cyano-4-phenyltoluene

10 To a cold (0°C) suspension of 3-amino-4-phenyltoluene (1.97g) in 2.65mL of water and 2.65mL of 12N HCl was slowly added a solution of sodium nitrite (738mg) in 2mL of water. To this yellowish slurry, 10mL of fluoroboric acid was added with
15 stirring. The cold mixture was filtered and the solid (2.02g) washed with cold fluoroboric acid, ethanol and ether. A solution of this diazonium salt (2.02g) in 5mL of DMSO was added dropwise with cooling to a mixture of CuCN and NaCN in DMSO
20 (13.3mL). The reaction mixture was then diluted with water (20mL) and extracted repeatedly with benzene. The combined organic layers were washed with water (2x) and brine and then dried over anhydrous $MgSO_4$. Concentration under vacuum gave a reddish oil which
25 was chromatographed on silica gel to give 0.788g of product.

Step D: N-Triphenylmethyl-5-[2'-(4'-methylbiphenyl-4-yl)]tetrazole

30 A solution of 3-cyano-4-phenyltoluene (390mg) and trimethyltin azide (525mg) in 2.5mL of toluene was heated at reflux for 24hr under

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 188 -

nitrogen. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue suspended in 3.5mL of toluene. Tetrahydrofuran (0.25mL) was added followed by HCl gas until the solution became homogenous. The mixture was concentrated and the residue (307mg) dissolved in 5mL of CH₂Cl₂ and treated with 504mg of triphenylmethyl chloride and 233mg of triethylamine under nitrogen. The mixture was stirred overnight and then diluted with CH₂Cl₂ and water. The layers were separated and the aqueous layer further extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, then dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate. Concentration under vacuum afforded 935mg which was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with hexanes:ethyl acetate (9:1) to give 615mg of product.

Step E: N-Triphenylmethyl-5-[2'-(4'-bromomethyl-biphenyl-4-yl)]tetrazole

A solution of N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2'-(methylbiphenyl-4-yl)]tetrazole (95.7mg), N-bromosuccinimide (35.5mg) and AIBN (2mg) in 4mL of CCl₄ was heated at reflux for 4hr. The reaction mixture was filtered and the filtrate concentrated to give 129mg of product.

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

To a solution of 33.7mg of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzaepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide (Example 57, Step

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 189 -

A) in 0.5mL of dry dimethylformamide at room temperature was added 3.6mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion under nitrogen. After 30 minutes, N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2'-(4'-bromomethylbiphenyl-4-yl)]-tetrazole (129mg) in 0.2mL of dry dimethylformamide was added and the resulting mixture stirred for 8hr at room temperature. The mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate and washed with water (2x) and brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The crude product was chromatographed on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate:hexanes (2:1) to give 16mg of pure product. FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{53}H_{53}N_7O_2$ 851; found 858 (M+Li).

Step G: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

A solution of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide (14mg) in 0.3mL of methanol and 0.3mL of 9N HCl was stirred overnight at room temperature and under nitrogen. The reaction mixture was diluted with benzene and freeze-dried to give 12mg of crude product which was purified by RP-HPLC on a Dynamax C18 column, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 60% methanol to 20% methanol in ten minutes) to give 9.0mg of the title compound. FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{31}N_7O_2$ 510; found 511

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 190 -

(M+1). ^1H NMR (400MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 3H), 2.1-2.85 (m, 6H), 4.39 (dd; 8, 13Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.39 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 7.1 (m, 2H), 7.2-7.32 (m, 7H), 7.55-7.70 (m, 3H).

5

Example 69

4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-
10 [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 4-Methylphenyltrimethylstannane

41.4L of 1.0 M p-tolylmagnesium bromide in diethyl ether (41.4mol) was added dropwise, maintaining the temperature below -5°C , over 4 hours to a solution of 546g (2.79mol) of trimethyltin chloride in tetrahydrofuran (4L) under nitrogen at -10°C . The suspension was allowed to warm slowly to room temperature over 12h then saturated ammonium chloride solution (1L) was added followed by sufficient water (approximately 1L) to dissolve the precipitate. The solution was extracted with ether-hexane (1:1) (1x4L, 3x2L). The combined organic phases were washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (95:5) gave a pale yellow oil containing white crystals of 4,4'-dimethylbiphenyl which were removed by filtration to leave 711.3g (100%) of product. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 0.30 (s, 9H), 2.34 (s, 3H), 7.19 (d, 7.7Hz, 2H), 7.40 (d, 7.7Hz, 2H).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 191 -

Step B: 4'-Methyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile

A solution of 2.0g (10.98mmol) of 2-bromobenzonitrile, 2.93g (11.54mmol) of 4-methylphenyltrimethylstannane (Step A) and 0.385g (0.55mmol) of bis-triphenylphosphine palladium (II) chloride in 50mL of dry dimethylformamide under nitrogen was heated at 100°C for 5.5 hours. The reaction was cooled to room temperature. The reaction was poured into 150mL of water and extracted with ether (3x150mL). The combined ether extracts were washed with water (4x100mL) and brine (100mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by flash chromatography on silica gel, eluting with hexane/ether (85:15), afforded 1.69g (80%) of the product contaminated with about 10% of 2-methylbenzonitrile. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.40 (s, 3H), 7.27 (d, 7Hz, 2H), 7.30-7.65 (m, 5H), 7.72 (d, 6Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₄H₁₁N 193; found 193 (M⁺, 100%).

Step C: 4'-Bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile

To a solution of 699mg (3.62mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 15mL of carbon tetrachloride under nitrogen was added 708.3mg (3.98mmol, 1.1 eq) of N-bromosuccinimide and 59mg (0.36mmol, 0.1eq) of azobisisobutyronitrile (AIBN). The resulting mixture was heated in the dark for 4 hours. The mixture was cooled to room temperature and filtered. The filtrate was concentrated under vacuum to afford 948mg (96%) of the product as a yellow solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 4.51 (s, 2H),

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 192 -

7.25-7.80 (m, 8H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₄H₁₀BrN 272; found 272, 274 (M⁺). ¹H NMR indicates the presence of minor amounts of starting material and dibromo derivative.

5

Step D: 3-[[1-[[2'-Cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxopropylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

10

To a solution of 0.83g (2.21mmol) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) in 6mL of dry dimethylformamide at room temperature under nitrogen was added 97mg of 60% sodium hydride dispersion in oil (58mg NaH, 2.43mmol, 1.1 eq). After stirring for 1 hour, a solution of 780mg (2.88mmol, 1.3 eq) of 4'-bromo-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile (Step C) in 2.0mL of dimethylformamide was added via cannula. The flask which originally contained the bromide was washed with 1mL of dry dimethylformamide which was then added to the reaction mixture via cannula. After stirring at room temperature for 3 hours, the reaction was diluted with 200mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 50mL of water and 50mL of brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (6:4), to afford 1.13g (90%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃):

15

20

25

30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 193 -

1.32 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,12H), 1.85 (m,1H), 2.35-2.70
(m,5H), 4.52 (m,1H), 4.90 (d,12Hz,1H), 5.21
(d,12Hz,1H), 6.70 (d,5Hz,1H), 7.10-7.65 (m,12H), 7.72
(d,6Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{34}H_{38}N_4O_4$
566; found 567 (M+H).

Step E: 4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-
1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-
2-carboxamide

To a solution of 600mg (1.06mmol) of
intermediate from Step D in 3.0mL of dimethylsulfoxide
was added 15mg (0.106mmol) of anhydrous potassium
carbonate followed by 0.88mL of 30% aqueous hydrogen
peroxide. The resulting mixture was stirred at room
temperature for 24 hours. The reaction was diluted
with 100mL of chloroform and washed with water
(30mL), 50% saturated aqueous sodium bisulfite (30mL)
and brine (30mL). The organic layer was dried over
sodium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed
under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash
chromatography on silica gel, eluting with ethyl
acetate, to afford 551.4mg (90%) of the product as a
white solid. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.30 (s,3H),
1.37 (s,12H), 1.85 (m,1H), 2.45-2.70 (m,5H), 4.50
(m,1H), 4.85 (d,12Hz,1H), 5.18 (s,1H), 5.25
(d,12Hz,1H), 5.65 (s,1H), 6.78 (d,5Hz,1H), 7.2-7.5
(m,12H), 7.70 (dd;5,1Hz;1H). FAB-MS: calculated
for $C_{34}H_{40}N_4O_5$ 584; found 586.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 194 -

Step F: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

5 To a slurry of 551mg (0.942mmol) of intermediate from Step E in 2mL of dry methylene chloride was added 5 drops of anisole followed by 2mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After stirring for 2 hours at room temperature all volatiles were removed under
10 vacuum. The resulting material was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (55:45) to afford 535mg (95%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR
15 (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.48 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.65 (m, 6H), 4.42 (dd; 7, 10Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.2-7.6 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₂N₄O₃ 484; found 485 (M+H, 100%).

20

Example 70

4'-[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-[(2(R)-hydroxy-propyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide,
25 trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 0.75g (1.25mmol) of 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate
30 (Example 69) in 15mL dry methanol was added 0.35mL (2.50mmol) of triethylamine, 4.0g of dry 4A powdered molecular sieves followed by a solution of 1.3g

- 195 -

(7.5mmol) of 2(R)-benzyloxypropanal (prepared according to the procedure of Hanessian and Kloss, Tetrahedron Lett. 1985, 26, 1261-1264.) in 5mL of dry methanol. The pH of the mixture was carefully
5 adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid. The reaction was stirred for 5 hours at which time 7.5mL (7.5mmol) of a 1.0 M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added by syringe. The reaction was stirred for 3 days then
10 filtered through a pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 5.0mL of trifluoroacetic acid (CAUTION! evolution of hydrogen cyanide) and the resulting mixture stirred for three hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum to afford 5.0g of a clear oil.

15 The crude intermediate was dissolved in 30mL of methanol and placed in a shaker bottle. To the solution was added 1mL of trifluoroacetic acid followed by 1.2g of 30% palladium on carbon. The mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and
20 40psi for 36 hours. The mixture was filtered through Celite and the solvent removed under vacuum. The resulting material was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid
25 (60:40) to afford 640mg (78%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.22 (d, 8Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 2H), 2.32 (m, 2H), 2.62 (m, 4H), 2.80 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 3.08 (dd; 3, 11Hz; 1H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.39 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H),
30 5.02 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.55 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₂H₃₈N₄O₄ 542; found 544 (M+H, 100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 196 -

Example 71

4'-[[[3(R)-[[[3-[(2(S),3-Dihydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbox-
5 amide, trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 0.585g (0.98mmol) of 4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-
10 [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 69) in 15mL dry methanol was added 0.27mL (1.95mmol) of triethylamine, 2.5g of dry 4A powdered molecular sieves followed by a solution of 1.3g (10mmol) of D-glyceraldehyde acetonide (used crude as
15 prepared according to the procedure of Hertel, L.W.; Grossman, C. S.; Kroin, J.S. Synth. Comm. 1991, 21, 151-154.) in 5mL of dry methanol. The pH of the mixture was carefully adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid (7 drops). The reaction was stirred for
20 3 hours at which time 4.9mL (4.9mmol) of a 1.0M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added via syringe. The reaction was stirred for 20 hours then filtered through a pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 5.0mL of
25 trifluoroacetic acid (CAUTION! hydrogen cyanide evolved), 5.0ml of water and 5 drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The resulting mixture was stirred for 24 hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum to afford a clear oil which was purified by reverse
30 phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (60:40) to afford 590mg (90%) of the title

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 197 -

compound as a white solid. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD):
1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.31 (m, 1H),
2.60 (m, 4H), 2.98 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 3.19
(dd; 3, 12Hz; 1H), 3.55 (dd; 3, 6Hz; 2H), 3.83 (m, 1H), 4.40
(dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 5.02 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.15 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
7.20-7.55 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{38}\text{N}_4\text{O}_5$ 558; found 560 (100%).

Example 72

N-Ethyl-4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-
amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 4'-[[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[[3-methyl-1-
oxo-3-[[[benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]-
amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid
1,1-dimethylethyl ester

To a solution of 1.22g (3.0mmol) of 3-benzyl-
oxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 1,
Step F) in 10mL of dry dimethylformamide under
nitrogen was added 131.6mg (3.29mmol) of 60% sodium
hydride in oil. After stirring for 20 minutes, a
solution of 1.14g (3.29mmol) of t-butyl 4'-bromo-
methyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxylate (prepared
according to the procedure of D.J. Carini, et. al.
EPO publication 324,377) in 2.5mL of dimethylformamide
was added by cannula. The flask which originally
contained the bromide was rinsed with 2.5mL
dimethylformamide which was added to the reaction

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 198 -

mixture. After stirring at room temperature for 2 hours, the reaction was diluted with 400mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 100mL of water and 100mL of brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (55:45) to afford 1.74g (96%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.15 (s, 9H), 1.45 (s, 3H), 1.48 (s, 3H), 1.76 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.62 (m, 5H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.79 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.04 (t, 12Hz, 2H), 5.35 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.70 (d, 6Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.45 (m, 17H), 7.72 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₁H₄₅N₃O₆ 675; found 683 (M+Li).

Step B: 4'-[[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]-amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid

To a solution of 150mg (0.22mmol) of the intermediate from Step A in 1mL of dry methylene chloride was added 2 drops of anisole followed by 1mL of trifluoroacetic acid. The solution was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature. The solvent was removed under vacuum and the resulting oil was azeotroped with carbon tetrachloride (3x20mL) to afford 140mg (100%) of product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 6H), 1.65 (m, 1H), 2.10-2.40 (m, 3H), 2.61 (s, 2H), 4.45 (m, 1H), 4.62 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 5.27 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.00-7.36 (m, 15H), 7.42 (m, 1H), 7.55 (m, 1H), 7.68 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.95 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 8.18 (br s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₇H₃₇N₃O₆ 619; found 642 (M+Na).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 199 -

Step C: N-Ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)-
amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a slurry of 14mg (0.169mmol) of
ethylamine hydrochloride in 1mL of dry methylene
chloride under nitrogen at 0°C was added 0.047mL
(0.339mmol) of triethylamine followed by a solution
of 70mg (0.113mmol) of the intermediate from Step B
in 1mL of methylene chloride. To this mixture was
added 75mg (0.169mmol) of benzotriazol-1-yloxy-
tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate.
The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to room
temperature. After 2 hours the reaction was diluted
with 75mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 25mL of 5%
aqueous citric acid, 25mL of saturated aqueous sodium
bicarbonate and 25mL of brine. The organic layer was
dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the
solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was
purified by flash chromatography on silica gel
eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (9:1) to afford
74mg (100%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.75 (t, 6Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.38
(s, 3H), 1.76 (m, 2H), 2.35-2.62 (m, 5H), 3.10 (m, 2H),
4.48 (m, 1H), 4.82 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.04 (m, 3H), 5.30
(d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.57 (s, 1H), 6.65 (d, 6Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.45
(m, 15H), 7.62 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for
C₃₉H₄₂N₄O₅ 646; found 669 (M+Na).

- 200 -

Step D: N-Ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

5 To a solution of 74mg (0.114mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step C in 5mL of dry methanol was added 3 drops of trifluoroacetic acid and 15mg of 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon. The mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and
10 40psi for 3 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the solvent removed under vacuum. The resulting material was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoro-
15 acetic acid (60:40) to afford 64mg (90%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.85 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.1 (m, 1H), 2.3 (m, 1H), 2.50-2.65 (m, 4H), 3.09 (q, 7Hz, 2H), 4.40 (dd; 6, 13Hz; 1H), 4.92 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
20 5.30 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.52 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₁H₃₆N₄O₃ 512; found 514 (100%).

Example 73

25 N-Ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from N-ethyl-
30 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 201 -

(Example 72) and D-glyceraldehyde acetonide (used crude as prepared according to the procedure of Hertel, L.W.; Grossman, C. S.; Kroin, J.S., Synth. Comm. 1991, 21, 151-154.) by the procedure described in Example 71. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.87 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.50-2.65 (m, 4H), 2.85-3.25 (m, 4H), 3.55 (m, 2H), 3.83 (m, 1H), 4.40 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 5.00 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.52 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₄H₄₂N₄O₅ 586; found 588 (100%).

Example 74

15 N-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

20 Step A: N-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-(benzyloxy-carbonyl)amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

To a solution of 70mg (0.11mmol) of 4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid (Example 72, Step B) in 2mL of dry methylene chloride under nitrogen at 0°C was added 0.023mL (0.17mmol) of triethylamine followed by 55mg (0.12mmol) of benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethyl-amino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate. After 5

- 202 -

minutes, 0.010mL (0.12mmol) of ethanolamine was added to the reaction by syringe. The reaction mixture was slowly warmed to room temperature. After 2 hours, the reaction was diluted with 75mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 25mL of 5% aqueous citric acid, 25mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 25mL of brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate/methanol (97:3) to afford 58mg (78%) of the product as a white foam. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.30 (s, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.80 (m, 1H), 2.20-2.75 (m, 7H), 3.10-3.40 (m, 4H), 4.51 (m, 1H), 4.92 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.00 (s, 2H), 5.10 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.68 (s, 1H), 6.53 (d, 6Hz, 1H), 7.12-7.48 (m, 16H), 7.65 (d; 1, 6Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{39}\text{H}_{42}\text{N}_4\text{O}_6$ 662; found 686 (M+Na).

Step B: N-(2-Hydroxyethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 72, Step D. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.40 (m, 2H), 2.41-2.68 (m, 4H), 3.21 (t, 5Hz, 2H), 3.41 (t, 5Hz, 2H), 4.40 (dd; 6, 10Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.52 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_4\text{O}_4$ 528; found 530 (100%).

- 203 -

Example 75

5 N-(Phenylmethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

10 Step A: N-(Phenylmethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-(benzyloxy-carbonyl)amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared from 4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyl)amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid (Example 72, Step B) and benzylamine according to the procedure described in Example 74, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.31 (s, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 2.30-2.65 (m, 5H), 4.23 (d, 5Hz, 2H), 4.47 (m, 1H), 4.83 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.02 (s, 2H), 5.45 (m, 1H), 5.60 (s, 1H), 6.68 (d, 6Hz, 1H), 6.90 (m, 2H), 7.10-7.50 (m, 20H), 7.65 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₄H₄₄N₄O₅ 708; found 709 (M+H), 731 (M+Na, 100%).

25 Step B: N-(Phenylmethyl)-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

30 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A according to the procedure described in Example 72, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.45

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 204 -

(m,2H), 2.48-2.68 (m,4H), 4.28 (m,2H), 4.40
(dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.95 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.26 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.05 (m,2H), 7.15-7.55 (m,15H), 8.47 (t,6Hz,1H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₈N₄O₃ 574; found 576
(100%).

Example 76

10 N-[(4-Methoxyphenyl)methyl]-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-
methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-
1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbox-
amide, trifluoroacetate

15 Step A: N-[(4-Methoxyphenyl)methyl]-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-
(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-3-methyl-1-oxo-
butyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-
benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide

20 The title compound was prepared from
4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-
[[(benzyloxyoxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-
1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic
acid (Example 72, Step B) and 4-methoxybenzylamine by
the procedure described in Example 74, Step A. ¹H
25 NMR (200MHz,CD₃OD): 1.40 (s,6H), 2.00 (m,1H), 2.31
(m,1H), 2.50-2.75 (m,4H), 3.82 (s,3H), 4.27 (s,2H),
4.43 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.95 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.05
(d,12Hz,1H), 5.15 (d,12Hz,1H), 5.37 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.87
(m,3H), 7.03 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.20-7.57 (m,19H). FAB-MS:
30 calculated for C₄₅H₄₆N₄O₆ 738; found 740.

- 205 -

Step B: N-[(4-Methoxyphenyl)methyl]-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 72, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.45 (m, 2H), 2.48-2.68 (m, 4H), 3.75 (s, 3H), 4.20 (s, 2H), 4.40 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.80 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.19-7.52 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₇H₄₀N₄O₄ 604; found 606 (100%).

Example 77

N-[(4-Hydroxyphenyl)methyl]-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 60.5mg (0.084mmol) of N-[(4-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 76) in 3mL of dry methylene chloride under nitrogen was added 0.42mL (0.42mmol) of 1.0 M solution of boron tribromide in methylene chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours then 2mL of water was added followed by sufficient methanol to dissolve any remaining precipitate. The solvent was removed under vacuum.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 206 -

The resulting material was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (60:40) to afford 53mg (89%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 3H), 2.10-2.50 (m, 2H), 2.52-2.72 (m, 4H), 4.23 (s, 2H), 4.48 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 5.02 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.30 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 6.72 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 6.94 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.57 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₈N₄O₄ 590; found 592 (100%).

Example 78

N,N-Diethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: N,N-Diethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
Prepared from 4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]-amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid (Example 72, Step B) and diethylamine according to the procedure described in Example 74, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.65 (t, 6Hz, 3H), 0.72-1.00 (m, 3H), 1.35 (s, 6H), 1.96 (m, 1H), 2.27 (m, 1H), 2.40-2.68 (m, 6H), 2.80-3.12 (m, 2H), 3.55 (m, 1H), 4.35 (dd; 6, 10Hz; 1H), 4.82 (dd, 6, 15Hz; 1H), 5.04 (dd; 9, 16Hz; 2H), 5.40 (dd; 8, 14Hz; 1H), 7.15-7.55 (m, 17H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₁H₄₆N₄O₅ 674; found 676, 698 (M+Na).

- 207 -

Step B: N,N-Diethyl-4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

5 The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure
described in Example 72, Step D. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.67 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 0.75-1.00 (m, 3H),
1.34 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.80 (m, 7H), 2.80-3.15
10 (m, 2H), 3.55 (m, 1H), 4.40 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.87
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.36 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.55 (m, 12H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₄₀N₄O₃ 540; found 542
(100%).

15 Example 79

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carboxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a slurry of 54 mg (0.086mmol) of 4'-[[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid (Example 72, Step B) in 2mL of dry methylene chloride under nitrogen was added 0.5mL (0.5mmol) of 1.0M solution of boron tribromide in methylene chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes then quenched by the addition of 2mL of water. The remaining solids were dissolved by the addition of 2mL of methanol and the solvent were removed under vacuum. The resulting

- 208 -

material was purified by reverse phase medium
pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with
methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (60:40) to
afford 38mg (74%) of the title compound as an
5 off-white solid. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.34
(s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.00-2.46 (m, 2H), 2.50-2.70
(m, 4H), 4.42 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.99 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.23
(d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.2-7.6 (m, 11H), 7.76 (dd; 1, 7Hz; 1H).
FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{29}\text{H}_{31}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ 485; found 486
10 (M+H, 100%).

Example 80

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
15 hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benz-
azepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-[(Benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxy-
20 methyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

To a solution of 124mg (0.20mmol) of
4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-
[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-
25 benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic
acid (Example 72, Step B) in 1.5mL of dry
1,2-dimethoxyethane at 0°C was added 0.046mL
(0.421mmol) of N-methylmorpholine followed by 0.055mL
(0.42mmol) of isobutyl chloroformate. The reaction
30 mixture was stirred at 0°C for 1 hour then filtered.
Solids were rinsed with 1,2-dimethoxyethane (2x1mL)

- 209 -

and the filtrates combined. To the filtrate at 0°C was added by syringe a solution of 30.3mg (0.801mmol) of sodium borohydride in 0.3mL of water. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes then diluted with ethyl acetate (75mL). The organic layer was washed with saturated aqueous ammonium chloride (25mL) and brine (25mL), then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent was removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (75:25) to afford 86mg (71%) of the product as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.80 (m, 2H), 2.50 (m, 4H), 4.50 (m, 3H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.03 (dd; 10, 12Hz; 2H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.77 (s, 1H), 6.70 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.40 (m, 16H), 7.53 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₇H₃₉N₃O₅ 605; found 607 (30%).

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 40mg (0.066mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 2mL of methanol was added 5mg of 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon catalyst. The resulting mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere for 30 minutes. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/ 0.1%

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 210 -

aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (60:40) to afford 36mg (95%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.7 (m, 6H), 4.44 (m, 3H), 4.95 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 11H), 7.55 (d, 6Hz, 1H).
5 FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₃N₃O₃ 471; found 472 (M+H, 100%).

Example 81

10

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-methyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 30mg (0.066mmol) of
15 3-[(benzyloxycarbonyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide (Example 80, Step A) in 2mL of methanol was added 5mg of 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon catalyst and 1
20 drop of trifluoroacetic acid. The resulting mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere for 4 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by reverse phase medium
25 pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/ 0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (65:35) to afford 30mg (100%) of the title compound as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 2.0- 2.7 (m, 6H), 2.10 (s, 3H), 4.42
30 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.27 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₃N₃O₂ 455; found 456 (M+H, 100%).

- 211 -

Example 82

4'-[[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3(S),4-Trihydroxybutylamino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-
5 1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carbox-
amide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 1-t-Butyldimethylsilyl-2,3-isopropylidene-D-threitol

10 To a solution of 1.0g (6.2mmol) of
2,3-isopropylidene-D-threitol in 6.0mL of dry
dimethylformamide at 0°C was added 0.44g (6.5mmol) of
imidazole followed by dropwise addition of a solution
15 of 0.93g (6.2mmol) of t-butyldimethylsilyl chloride
in 6.0mL of dimethylformamide. The reaction mixture
was stirred at 0°C for 30 minutes then at room
temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was
poured into 75mL water and extracted with ether
(3x75mL). The combined ether extracts were washed
20 with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and with
brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium
sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under
vacuum. The resulting oil was purified by flash
chromatography on silica gel, eluting with
25 hexanes/ethyl acetate (75:25) to afford 0.70g (41%)
of product as a clear oil. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃):
0.07 (s, 6H), 0.90 (s, 9H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.41 (s, 3H),
3.60-4.00 (m, 7H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₃H₂₈O₄Si
276; found 261 (M-15, 10%).

30

- 212 -

Step B: 5(S)-t-Butyldimethylsilyloxymethyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4(R)-carboxaldehyde

To a solution of 0.676g (2.44mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step A in 35mL of dry methylene chloride was added 3mL of dry dimethylsulfoxide followed by 2.8mL (20.2mmol) of triethylamine. To this solution was added 1.61g (10.1mmol) of pyridine sulfur trioxide complex in three portions over a 5 minute period. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours at which time it was diluted with 250mL of ethyl acetate. The mixture was transferred to a separatory funnel and washed with 1N HCl (2x50mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (50mL) and brine (50mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and the solvent removed under vacuum to afford 672mg (100%) of product which was used in the next reaction without further purification. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.09 (s, 6H), 0.87 (s, 9H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 3H), 3.78 (d, 4Hz, 2H), 4.10 (m, 1H), 4.30 (dd; 2, 6Hz; 1H), 9.85 (d, 2Hz, 1H).

Step C: 4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3(S),4-Trihydroxybutyl-amino)-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

- 213 -

(Example 69) and the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 71. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.41 (s, 3H), 2.12-2.40 (m, 2H), 2.55-2.71 (m, 4H), 3.05-3.25 (m, 2H), 3.59 (m, 3H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.40 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 5.02 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.15 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.58 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{33}\text{H}_{40}\text{N}_4\text{O}_6$ 588; found 589 (M+H, 70%).

10

Example 83

4'-[[3(R)-[(2(R)-Amino-3-hydroxy-1-oxopropyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

15

Step A: 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-(t-butoxy)-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide

To a solution of 200mg (1.13mmol) of 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (Example 1, Step B) in 8mL of dry methylene chloride was added 0.206mL (1.48mmol) of triethylamine, 553mg (1.25mmol) of BOC-D-serine t-butyl ether followed by 602mg (1.36mmol) of benzotriazol-1-yloxytris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours then diluted with 100mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 25mL of 5% aqueous citric acid, 25mL of saturated sodium bicarbonate and 25mL of brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvents removed under vacuum. The residue was

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 214 -

purified by flash chromatography on silica gel, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexane (55:45) to afford 480mg (100%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.20 (s, 9H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.92 (m, 1H), 2.55-3.02 (m, 3H), 3.38 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 3.78 (m, 1H), 4.15 (m, 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 5.45 (s, 1H), 7.00 (m, 1H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.68 (d, 4Hz, 1H), 8.05 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₂H₃₃N₃O₅ 419; found 420 (M+H, 20%), 426 (M+Li, 40%).

Step B: 2(R)-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-(t-butoxy)-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-cyano[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and 4'-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile (Example 69, Step C) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.20 (s, 9H), 1.47 (s, 9H), 1.88 (m, 1H), 2.45-2.75 (m, 3H), 3.38 (dd; 6, 8Hz; 1H), 3.78 (m, 1H), 4.15 (m, 1H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 4.97 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.40 (s, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 11H), 7.6-7.8 (m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₄₂N₄O₅ 610; found 618 (M+Li, 30%).

Step C: 4'-[[3(R)-[[2(R)-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-3-hydroxy-1-oxopropyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 69, Step E. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CDCl₃): 1.18 (s, 9H), 1.45

- 215 -

(s,9H), 1.85 (m,1H), 2.45 (m,1H), 2.62 (m,2H), 3.38 (dd;6.8Hz;1H), 3.72 (m,1H), 4.12 (m,1H), 4.47 (m,1H), 4.92 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.13 (s,1H), 5.20 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.37 (s,2H), 7.17 (m,3H), 7.2-7.4 (m,6H), 7.40 (m,1H), 7.47 (m,1H), 7.60 (s,1H), 7.72 (d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{36}H_{44}N_4O_6$ 628; found 636 (M+Li,40%).

Step D: 4'-[[3(R)-[(2(R)-Amino-3-hydroxy-1-oxo-propyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 2.10 (m,1H), 2.37 (m,1H), 2.62 (m,2H), 3.8-4.1 (m,3H), 4.42 (dd;6.11Hz;1H), 4.95 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.27 (d,14Hz,1H), 7.2-7.6 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{27}H_{28}N_4O_4$ 472; found 473 (M+H,100%).

20

Example 84

4'-[[3(R)-[(2-Amino-2-methyl-1-oxopropyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

25

Step A: 2-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-cyano[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide

30

- 216 -

Prepared from 2-t-butoxycarbonylamino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide (Example 63, Step A) and 4'-bromomethyl-1-1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile (Example 69, Step C) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.41 (s, 3H), 1.45 (s, 3H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.8 (m, 3H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.90 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 4.93 (s, 1H), 5.22 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 10H), 7.60 (m, 1H), 7.72 (d, 6Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₆N₄O₄ 552; found 554 (20%).

Step B: 4'-[[3(R)-[[2-(t-Butoxycarbonyl)amino-2-methyl-1-oxopropyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 69, Step E. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.40 (s, 12H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.8 (m, 3H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.85 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 4.97 (s, 1H), 5.20 (s, 1H), 5.22 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.57 (s, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 11H), 7.70 (dd; 1, 6Hz; 1H).

Step C: 4'-[[3(R)-[(2-Amino-2-methyl-1-oxopropyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ¹H NMR

- 217 -

(200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.52 (s, 3H), 1.65 (s, 3H), 2.25 (m, 2H), 2.60 (m, 2H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 5.00 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.2-7.6 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₈H₃₀N₄O₃ 470; found 471 (M+H, 100%).

5

Example 85

3-(2-Aminoethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carboxy[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, dihydrochloride

10

Step A: 4'-[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-amino]butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester, acetate

15

To a solution of 400mg (0.592mmol) of 4'-[[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-((benzyloxycarbonyl)amino)butyl]amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid 1,1-dimethylethyl ester (Example 72, Step A) in 10mL of methanol was added 0.034mL (0.59mmol) of acetic acid and 80mg of 20% palladium hydroxide on carbon catalyst. The resulting mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere for 4 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to afford 345mg (97%) of the product as a white solid. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.17 (s, 9H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 1.95 (s, 3H), 2.15 (m, 1H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.50 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 2.5-2.78 (m, 3H), 4.42

20

25

30

- 218 -

(dd;8,11Hz;1H), 5.02 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.37 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.1-7.6 (m,11H), 7.67 (d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS:
calculated for $C_{33}H_{39}N_3O_4$ 541; found 542 (M+H,100%).

5 Step B: 2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)acetaldehyde

To a solution of 700mg (4.34mmol) of
2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)ethanol in 35mL of dry
methylene chloride was added 4.0mL of dimethyl-
sulfoxide and 4.8mL (35mmol) of triethylamine,
10 followed by 2.8g (17mmol) of pyridine sulfur trioxide
complex in three portions over 5 minutes. The
reaction was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours
then diluted with 500mL of ether. The mixture was
transferred to a separatory funnel and washed with 1N
15 HCl (2x50mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate
(100mL), and brine (100mL). The organic layer was
dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and the
solvent removed under vacuum to afford 550mg (80%) of
product which was used without further purification.
20 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.40 (s,9H), 4.05 (d,7Hz,2H),
5.17 (s,1H), 9.62 (s,1H).

25 Step C: 3-(2-Aminoethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carboxy-[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]butanamide, dihydrochloride

To a solution of 345mg (0.573mmol) of the
intermediate obtained in Step A in 10mL of dry
methanol was added 0.088mL (0.63mmol) of
30 triethylamine, 3.4g of dry 4A powdered molecular
sieves followed by a solution of 540mg (3.4mmol) of

- 219 -

2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)acetaldehyde (Step B) in 5mL of dry methanol. The pH of the mixture was carefully adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid (7 drops). The reaction was stirred for 3 hours at which time

5 3.4mL (3.4mmol) of a 1.0 M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added by syringe. The reaction was stirred for 20 hours then filtered through a pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 2.0mL of acetic acid (CAUTION! evolution

10 of hydrogen cyanide). The resulting mixture was stirred for 3 hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum to afford a clear oil which was dissolved in 5mL of methylene chloride. To this solution was added 5 drops of anisole followed by 5mL of

15 trifluoroacetic acid. The mixture was stirred for 4 hours at room temperature then all volatiles removed under vacuum to give an oil which was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous

20 trifluoroacetic acid (55:45). The product thus obtained was converted to its dihydrochloride salt by dissolving it in 10mL of 6 N HCl followed by evaporation under vacuum. The cycle was repeated three times to afford 273mg (79%) of the title

25 compound as an off-white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.45 (s, 3H), 1.51 (s, 3H), 2.1-2.5 (m, 2H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 3.2-3.5 (m, 4H), 4.42 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 5.00 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.22 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.2-7.6 (m, 11H), 7.78 (d, 6Hz, 1H). FAB-MS:

30 calculated for C₃₁H₃₆N₄O₄ 528; found 529 (M+H, 100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 220 -

Example 86

3-[(2(S)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
5 butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-[(2-(S)-Benzyloxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
10 1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 0.20g (0.34mmol) of
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
15 (Example 1) in 8mL of dry methanol was added 0.096mL (2.50mmol) of triethylamine, 1.0g of dry 4A powdered molecular sieves followed by a solution of 0.296g
20 (1.80mmol) of (S)-2-benzyloxypropanal (prepared from ethyl-L-lactate according to the procedure of Hanessian and Kloss, Tetrahedron Lett. 1985, 26, 1261-1264.) in 2mL of dry methanol. The pH of the
25 mixture was carefully adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid. The reaction was stirred for 2 hours at which time 2.06mL (2.06mmol) of a 1.0 M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added by syringe. The reaction was stirred for 24 hours
30 then filtered through a pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 5.0mL of trifluoroacetic acid (CAUTION! evolution of hydrogen cyanide) and the

- 221 -

resulting mixture was stirred for three hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum to afford 1.6g of a clear oil which was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (65:35) to afford 254mg (100%) of the product as a white solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.28 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 5H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.20 (m, 1H), 3.83 (m, 1H), 4.42 (m, 1H), 4.50 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 4.63 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.95 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.7 (m, 15H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₉H₄₃N₇O₃ 657; found 658 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 3-[(2(S)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl)methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

A solution of 250mg (0.324mmol) of the intermediate prepared in Step A in 5mL of methanol was placed in a shaker bottle. To the solution was added 3 drops of trifluoroacetic acid and 0.1g of 30% palladium on carbon. The mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi for 3 days. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and the filtrate evaporated under vacuum. The resulting material was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C-8 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (60:40) to afford 149mg (64%, Steps A + B) of the title compound

- 222 -

as a white solid. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.20 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.6 (m, 5H), 2.78 (m, 1H), 3.08 (m, 1H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.35 (dd; 7, 10Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{37}\text{N}_7\text{O}_3$ 567; found 568 (M+H, 100%).

Example 87

10

3-[[2-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)ethyl]amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

15

To a solution of 485mg (0.833mmol) of 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 1) in 8mL of dry methanol was added 0.232mL (1.67mmol) of triethylamine, 2.5g of dry 4A powdered molecular sieves followed by a solution of 200mg (1.25mmol) of 2-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)acetaldehyde (Example 85, Step B) in 1mL of dry methanol. The pH of the mixture was carefully adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid. The reaction was stirred for 2 hours at which time 5.0mL (5.0mmol) of a 1.0 M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added by syringe. The reaction was stirred for 20 hours then filtered through a pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 1.0mL of acetic acid (CAUTION! evolution of hydrogen cyanide). The

20

25

30

- 223 -

resulting mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The solvent was removed under vacuum to afford a clear oil which was purified by reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C-18 eluting with
5 methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (65:35) to afford 347mg (54%) of the title compound as a white solid. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.30 (s, 9H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.6 (m, 5H),
10 3.10 (m, 2H), 3.35 (m, 2H), 4.39 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.05 (m, 2H), 7.2-7.5 (m, 7H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 3H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{36}\text{H}_{44}\text{N}_8\text{O}_4$ 652; found 654 (100%).

Example 88

15

3-[(2-Aminoethyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, di(trifluoroacetate)

20

The title compound was prepared from

3-[[[2-t-butoxycarbonylamino)ethyl]amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, monotrifluoroacetate (Example 87) by
25 the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 5H), 3.33 (m, 4H), 4.35 (dd; 6, 11Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
30 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 7H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 3H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{31}\text{H}_{36}\text{N}_8\text{O}_2$ 552; found 553 (M+H, 100%).

- 224 -

Example 89

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
[1-(carboxymethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
5 methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-
10 (carboxymethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide, t-butyl ester
and,
3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-
15 [2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-
(carboxymethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide, t-butyl ester

To a solution of 101mg (0.166mmol) of
20 3-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide (Example 16, Step A) in 1mL of acetone was
added 0.028mL (0.20mmol) of triethylamine followed by
25 dropwise addition of 0.029mL (0.18mmol) of t-butyl
bromoacetate. The reaction mixture was stirred at
room temperature for 1 hour then the solvent was
removed under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in
50mL of methylene chloride, washed with saturated
30 aqueous sodium bicarbonate, dried over magnesium
sulfate and filtered. The filtrate was evaporated

- 225 -

under vacuum to afford 139mg (100%) of product as a mixture of N-1 and N-2 tetrazole isomers. ¹H NMR of mixture (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.30 (s, 6H), 1.40 (s, 6H), 1.50 (m, 36H), 1.90 (m, 2H), 2.4-2.7 (m, 8H), 3.80 (s, 2H), 4.07 (s, 2H), 4.52 (m, 2H), 4.80 (m, 2H), 5.37 (m, 2H), 6.72 (m, 2H), 7.0-7.4 (m, 16H), 7.4-7.8 (m, 6H). FAB-MS calculated for C₄₀H₄₉N₇O₆ 723; found 724 (M+H, 20%).

10 Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(carboxymethyl)tetrazol-5-yl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. Separation of isomers by reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C-18 eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid afforded the title compound in addition to the N-2 isomer. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.7 (m, 6H), 4.40 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.48 (s, 2H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.35 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 7H), 7.5-7.9 (m, 3H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₁H₃₃N₇O₄ 567; found 568 (M+H, 100%).

25

Example 90

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[2-(carboxymethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

30

- 226 -

The title compound was prepared from 3-(t-butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(2-(carboxymethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, t-butyl ester (Example 89, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 89, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H), 4.39 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.90 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.20 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.42 (s, 2H), 7.04 (d, 6Hz, 2H), 7.15 (d, 6Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.6 (m, 7H), 7.75 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₁H₃₃N₇O₄ 567; found 568 (M+H, 100%).

Example 91

15

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2,5-dioxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20 Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2,5-dioxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

To a solution of 120mg (0.531mmol) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2,5-dione (prepared by the procedure of F. Stewart, Australian J. Chem. 1980, 33, 633-640.) in 25 2mL of methanol was added 2mL of 9 N hydrochloric acid. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 24 hours and solvent was removed under vacuum.

30 To the resulting solid in 3mL of dry methylene chloride was added 0.22mL (1.6mmol) of

- 227 -

triethylamine, 115mg (0.531mmol) of 3-t-butoxy-carbonylamino-3-methyl butanoic acid (Example 31, Step E) followed by 235mg (0.531mmol) of benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours. The reaction was diluted with 75mL of ethyl acetate, washed with 25mL of 5% aqueous citric acid, 25mL of saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and 25mL of brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum. The residue was purified by flash chromatography on silica gel eluting with ethyl acetate/hexanes (65:35) to afford 109mg (51%) of the product as a white foam. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 12H), 2.49 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 2.75 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 2.9 (m, 1H), 3.27 (dd; 2, 16Hz; 1H), 5.05 (m, 2H), 7.05 (t, 6Hz, 1H), 7.24 (t, 6Hz, 1H), 7.50 (m, 1H), 7.82 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 8.85 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₀H₂₇N₃O₅ 389; found 390 (M+H, 60%).

Step B: 3-(t-Butoxycarbonylamino)-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2,5-dioxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A and N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole (Example 1, Step J) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 12H), 2.49 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.6-2.9 (m, 2H), 3.27 (m, 1H), 4.82

- 228 -

(d,15Hz,1H), 4.92 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.05 (s,1H), 5.15 (m,1H), 6.8-7.6 (m,26H), 7.90 (m,1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{53}H_{51}N_7O_5$ 865; found 873 (M+Li).

5 Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2,5-dioxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

10 To a solution of 68mg (0.078mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 3mL of methanol was added 14mg of palladium hydroxide catalyst. The mixture was hydrogenated at room temperature and 1 atmosphere for 20 hours at which time the solids were filtered and the solvent removed under vacuum.

15 The resulting solid was dissolved in 3mL of methylene chloride. To this solution was added 3 drops of anisole followed by 2mL of trifluoroacetic acid. The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature, then all volatiles removed under vacuum. The resulting material was purified by reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C-18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient; 50% methanol increased to 55% methanol over 12 minutes) to afford 16.5mg (33%) of the title compound as a white solid. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.37 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,3H), 2.59 (dd;14,16Hz;2H), 2.9-3.2 (m,2H), 4.97 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.17 (dd;4,12Hz;1H), 5.25 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.00 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.12 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.37 (m,2H), 7.4-7.7 (m,6H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{29}N_7O_3$ 523; found 524 (M+H,100%).

20
25
30

- 229 -

Example 92

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[5-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
5 methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 23mg (0.036mmol) of
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2,5-dioxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H
10 -1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
(Example 91) in 1mL of methanol/water (4:1) was added
14mg (0.36mmol) of sodium borohydride. The reaction
mixture was stirred for 1 hour then quenched by the
addition of 5 drops of trifluoroacetic acid. The
15 solvent was removed under vacuum and the resulting
material was purified by reverse phase high pressure
liquid chromatography on C-18 eluting with
methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (55:45) to
afford 18mg (78%) of the title compound as a white
20 solid. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.40
(s, 3H), 2.17 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 3H), 4.30
(dd; 8, 10Hz; 1H), 4.67 (dd; 6, 10Hz; 1H), 4.95
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.20
(d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.35 (m, 3H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 5H). FAB-MS:
25 calculated for C₂₉H₃₁N₇O₃ 525; found 526 (M+H, 100%).

Example 93

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-
1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide, trifluoroacetate

- 230 -

Step A: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide

5 A solution of 380mg (0.67mmol) of 3-[[1-[[2'-cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxopropylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester (Example 69, Step D), in 5mL of pyridine was
10 placed in a bomb and treated with 5mL of triethylamine and excess hydrogen sulfide was introduced under pressure. The bomb was sealed and heated for 12 hours at 90°C. The bomb was vented into 5 M sodium hydroxide and the contents poured
15 into 40mL of water, then extracted with ether (3x). The combined extracts were washed with water (3x), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to afford 330mg (0.53mmol, 82%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,6H), 1.45
20 (s,9H), 1.90 (m,1H), 2.4-2.7 (m,4H), 2.92 (m,1H), 4.55 (m,1H), 4.94 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.22 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.31 (br s,1H), 6.50 (br s,1H), 6.70 (m,1H), 7.1-7.5 (m,12H), 7.82 (m,1H). FAB-MS (Li+ spike): calculated for C₃₄H₄₀N₄O₄S 600; found 607 (M+Li,65%).

25

Step B: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide, trifluoroacetate

30

A suspension of 80mg (0.13mmol) of the intermediate prepared in Step A in 10mL of methylene

- 231 -

chloride at room temperature was treated with 5mL of trifluoroacetic acid. After 45 minutes, all volatiles were removed under vacuum and the residue placed under high vacuum. Purification by preparative thin layer chromatography on a 1mm silica plate eluting with methylene chloride/methanol/acetic acid (9:1:0.1) afforded 43mg of the free amine which was converted to the trifluoroacetate salt by dissolving in 3mL of methanol and adding 0.5mL of trifluoroacetic acid, followed by removal of volatiles under vacuum. In this manner, 30mg (0.05mmol, 37%) of the title compound was obtained. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s,3H), 1.39 (s,3H), 2.11 (m,1H), 2.31 (m,1H), 2.45-2.65 (m,4H), 4.40 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.94 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.24 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.20-7.55 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₂N₄O₂S 500; found 501 (M+H,100%).

Example 94

N-Hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: N-Hydroxy-4'-[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]-amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

Prepared from 4'-[[2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-3(R)-[[3-methyl-1-oxo-3-[[[(benzyloxy)carbonyl]amino]butyl]-amino]-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-

- 232 -

biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid (Example 72, Step B) and (O-trimethylsilyl)hydroxylamine by the procedure described in Example 72, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 1.77 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.5 (m, 4H), 4.46 (m, 1H), 4.68 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.02 (s, 2H), 5.14 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.73 (br s, 1H), 6.82 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 16H), 7.60 (d, 8Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calc. for C₃₇H₃₈N₄O₆ 634; found 635 (M+H, 1%).

Step B: N-Hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 79. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.36 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.7 (m, 6H), 4.41 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 5.03 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz), 7.2-7.6 (m, 12H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₂N₄O₄ 500; found 502 (100%).

Example 95

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 4'-Methyl-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4-methylphenyltrimethylstannane (Example 69, Step A) and 2-bromonitrobenzene by the procedure described in Example 69, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.39 (s, 3H), 7.23 (m, 3H), 7.45 (m, 3H), 7.58 (t, 7Hz, 1H), 7.80 (d, 7Hz, 1H).

- 233 -

Step B: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4'-methyl-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 69,

5 Step C. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 4.53 (s, 2H), 7.2-7.7 (m, 7H), 7.85 (m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}\text{BrN}$ 272; found 272, 274 (M+). ^1H NMR indicates the presence of minor amounts of starting material and dibromo derivative.

10 Step C: 3-[[1-[[2'-Nitro-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxopropylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

15 Prepared from 4'-bromomethyl-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ^1H NMR
20 (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.34 (s, 6H), 1.41 (s, 9H), 1.83 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.70 (m, 5H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.84 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.27 (s, 1H), 6.64 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 11H), 7.80 (d, 8Hz, 1H).

25 Step D: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-nitro-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

30 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ^1H NMR (400MHz, CD_3OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 3H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.32 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.7 (m, 4H), 4.40

- 234 -

(dd;8,11Hz;1H), 4.99 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.21 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.1-7.4 (m,8H), 7.45 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.54 (t,8Hz,1H),
7.67 (t,8Hz,1H), 7.85 (d,8Hz,1H). FAB-MS:
calculated for $C_{28}H_{30}N_4O_4$ 486; found 487 (M+H,90%).

5

Example 96

2-Amino-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-
amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
10 methyl]-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

A solution of 200mg (0.34mmol) of the
intermediate obtained in Example 95 (Step C) in 3mL
of methanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and
40psi over 50mg of 5% palladium on carbon for 90
15 minutes. The catalyst was removed by filtration
through Celite and the filtrate evaporated to dryness
under vacuum to afford 189mg (0.34mmol,100%) of
product.

The above intermediate (90mg, 0.16mmol) was
20 dissolved in 5mL of methylene chloride and treated
with 0.25mL of trifluoroacetic acid. The mixture was
stirred at room temperature for 14 hours then all
volatiles removed under vacuum to give 46mg
(0.10mmol, 62%) of the title compound. 1H NMR
25 (400MHz, CD_3OD): 1.38 (s,3H), 1.42 (s,3H), 2.13
(m,1H), 2.32 (m,1H), 2.45-2.70 (m,4H), 4.40
(dd;7,11Hz;1H), 5.00 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.29 (d,15Hz,1H),
7.05-7.45 (m,12H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $C_{28}H_{32}N_4O_2$ 456; found 457 (M+H,100%).

30

- 235 -

Example 97

4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,-
5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl][1,1'-
5 biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid-N(2)-formylhydrazide,
trifluoroacetate

Step A: 4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-
1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
10 1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-
2-carboxylic acid-N(2)-formylhydrazide

A solution of 100mg (0.17mmol) of 4'-[[[3(R)-
[(3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl)methyl]-
15 [1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide (Example 93, Step A) in
6mL of tetrahydrofuran was treated with 0.08mL of
methyl iodide and the resulting solution stirred at
room temperature for 14 hours. The mixture was
evaporated under vacuum to give the product which was
20 used in the next step without purification.

A solution of 40mg (0.68mmol) of formic
hydrazide in 2mL of dry dimethylformamide was added
to the intermediate obtained above and the resulting
solution stirred at room temperature for 14 hours.
25 An additional 80mg (1.4mmol) of formic hydrazide was
added and stirring continued for another 5 hours.
The reaction mixture was added to ethyl acetate and
washed with water (4x). The organic layer was
separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and
30 solvents removed under vacuum. Purification by
preparative thin layer chromatography on silica,
eluting with methylene chloride/methanol (9:1),
afforded 32mg (0.05mmol, 30%) of product. ¹H NMR

- 236 -

(200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.30 (s, 6H), 1.37 (s, 9H), 1.84 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 5H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.76 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.98 (br s, 2H), 5.24 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.53 (br s, 1H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 12H), 8.34 (br s, 1H).

5

Step B: 4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxylic acid-N(2)-formyl hydrazide, trifluoro-

10

acetate

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in

Step A by the procedure described in Example 69, Step

F. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39

(s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.22 (m, 1H), 2.35-2.70 (m, 4H),

15

4.39 (m, 1H), 4.9 (m, 1H), 5.3 (m, 1H), 7.2-7.8 (m, 12H),

8.20 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₀H₃₃N₅O₄

527; found 534 (M+Li, 10%).

Example 98

20

4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-(hydroxyacetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

25

Step A: 4'-Methyl-2-acetyl-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4-methylphenyltrimethylstannane (Example 69, Step A) and 2'-bromoacetophenone by the procedure described in Example 69, Step

B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.98 (s, 3H), 2.37

30

(s, 3H), 7.20 (s, 4H), 7.3-7.5 (s, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₅H₁₄O 210; found 211 (M+H, 100%).

- 237 -

Step B: 4'-Methyl-2-(bromoacetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 4'-methyl-2-acetyl-1,1'-biphenyl (2.06g, 9.79mmol) in 10mL of glacial acetic acid was treated dropwise with a solution of bromine (1.722g, 1.07mmol) dissolved in 3.0mL of glacial acetic acid. After initiating the reaction with the first few drops of the bromine/acetic acid reagent by heating the reaction mixture at 30°C, the remainder of the bromine solution was added dropwise at 25-30°C. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature until the consumption of bromine was complete (approximately 2 hrs). The reaction mixture was diluted with 150mL of hexane then washed with water (3x50mL). The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to give 2.92g of an oil that was used in the next step without purification. ¹H NMR (crude product) (200MHz; CDCl₃): 2.38 (s, 3H), 3.66 (s, 2H), 7.21 (s, 4H), 7.3-7.6 (m, 4H).

Step C: 4'-Methyl-2-(acetoxycetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 1.44g (4.98mmol) of 4'-methyl-2-(bromoacetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl in 3.0mL of polyethyleneglycol-400 was added to a solution of 500mg of potassium acetate in 3.0mL of polyethyleneglycol-400. The suspension was heated at 100°C for 30 minutes, then cooled and diluted with 100mL of water. The resultant mixture was extracted with ether; the combined ether extracts were diluted with an equal volume of hexane and washed with water. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and the solvent was removed under

- 238 -

vacuum to yield an oil which was purified by silica chromatography, eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (8:1) to give 444mg (1.66mmol, 33%) of product as an oil. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.39 (s, 3H), 4.46 (s, 2H), 7.23 (s, 4H), 7.3-7.6 (m, 4H).

Step D: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-(acetoxycetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4'-methyl-2-(acetoxycetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.01 (s, 3H), 4.49 (s, 4H), 7.15-7.55 (m, 8H).

Step E: 3-[[1-[[2'-(acetoxycetyl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxo-propylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

Prepared from 4'-bromomethyl-2-(acetoxycetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s, 6H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.87 (m, 1H), 2.03 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.70 (m, 5H), 4.36 (s, 2H), 4.51 (m, 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.28 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.66 (m, 1H), 7.1-7.6 (m, 12H).

- 239 -

Step F: 4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-(hydroxyacetyl)-1,1'-biphenyl. trifluoroacetate

5 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.30 (s, 3H), 1.34 (s, 3H), 2.08 (m, 1H), 2.28 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.6 (m, 4H), 4.01 (s, 2H),
10 4.36 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 12H). FAB-MS (Li⁺ spike): calculated for C₃₀H₃₃N₃O₄ 499; found 500 (M+H, 18%), 506 (M+Li, 100%).

15 Example 99

4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl. trifluoroacetate

20

Step A: 4'-Methyl-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 4.2g (20.0mmol) of 4'-methyl-2-acetyl-1,1'-biphenyl (Example 98, Step A) in methylene chloride, under a nitrogen atmosphere,
25 was treated with 8.98g of 85% m-chloroperbenzoic acid. The resultant suspension was cooled to 0 °C and treated dropwise with 1.54mL of trifluoroacetic acid over a 10 minute period. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 16 hours. The
30 reaction mixture was diluted with 50mL of methylene chloride and the solution was washed successively with 50mL of 10% sodium sulfite, 50mL of saturated aqueous potassium carbonate and water (3x50mL). The organic layer was removed and dried over magnesium

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 240 -

sulfate, then evaporated under vacuum to yield 4.1g of an oil. The oil was dissolved in 20mL of methanol and treated with 2.0mL of 5N aqueous sodium hydroxide. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The pH of the solution was adjusted to 5-6 with acetic acid. After the methanol was removed under vacuum, the residue was taken up in ether, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to yield 3.0g of crude product which was purified by preparative high pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (10:1). In this manner, 1.85g (10.0mmol, 50%) of the product was obtained as an oil. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.40 (s, 3H), 5.22 (br s, 1H), 6.96 (m, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 6H). EI-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{12}\text{O}$ 184; found 184 (M^+ , 100%).

Step B: 4'-Methyl-2-acetoxy-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 1.0g (5.4mmol) of 4'-methyl-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl in 2.0mL of pyridine was treated with 2mL of acetic anhydride. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 5 hours. The solvent was removed under vacuum to yield 1.11g (4.9mmol, 90 %) of the product as an oil. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.07 (s, 3H), 2.36 (s, 3H), 7.07 (dd; 3, 8Hz; 1H), 7.15 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 5H).

Step C: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-acetoxy-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4'-methyl-2-acetoxy-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.05 (s, 3H), 4.50 (s, 2H), 7.08 (m, 1H), 7.20-7.45 (m, 7H).

- 241 -

Step D: 3-[[1-[[2'-acetoxy-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxopropylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

5 Prepared from 4'-bromomethyl-2-acetoxy-1,1'-biphenyl and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR
10 (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.38 (s, 6H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.85 (m, 1H), 2.02 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.65 (m, 5H), 4.52 (m, 1H), 4.84 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.30 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.71 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 12H).

15 Step E: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

A solution of 468mg (0.78mmol) of the
20 intermediate obtained in Step D in 25mL of methanol was treated with 4.0mL of 5N aqueous sodium hydroxide and the resultant solution stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The solvent was removed under vacuum to yield the crude intermediate which was used
25 without purification.

The intermediate obtained above was treated as described in Example 69, Step F to afford the title compound. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.32 (m, 1H), 2.45-2.70
30 (m, 4H), 4.41 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.95 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.23 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.86 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.11 (m, 1H), 7.15-7.25 (m, 5H), 7.35 (m, 2H), 7.45 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

- 242 -

Example 100

4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]2,3,-
4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-
5 2-(4-aminophenoxy)-1,1'-biphenyl, di(trifluoroacetate)

Step A: 4'-Methyl-2-(4-nitrophenoxy)-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 450mg (2.44mmol) of 4'-methyl-
2-hydroxy-1,1'-biphenyl (Example 99, Step A) in 7.0mL
10 of dimethylformamide was treated with 135mg of 60%
sodium hydride (3.3mmol). The reaction mixture was
stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes then
treated with 428mg (3.03mmol) of 1-fluoro-2-nitro-
benzene. The reaction mixture was heated at 100°C
15 for 2 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, poured
into 100mL of water and the resultant mixture was
extracted with ethyl ether (3x60mL). The combined
extracts were washed with water (4x50mL), dried over
magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under
20 vacuum. The residue was chromatographed on silica,
eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (10:1) to give
737mg (99%) of the product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃):
2.28 (s, 3H), 6.83 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.08 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
7.3-7.5 (m, 6H), 8.05 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

25

Step B: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-(4-nitrophenoxy)-1,1'-
biphenyl

Prepared from 4'-methyl-2-(4-nitrophenoxy)-
1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example
30 69, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 4.43 (s, 2H),
6.83 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.09 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.3-7.5 (m, 7H),
8.04 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

- 243 -

Step C: 3-[[1-[[2'-(4-nitrophenoxy)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxo-propylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

5 Prepared from 4'-bromomethyl-2-(4-nitro-phenoxy)-1,1'-biphenyl and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR
10 (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.32 (s, 6H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.7 (m, 5H), 4.47 (m, 1H), 4.75 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.13 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.63 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.75 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.05-7.50 (m, 11H), 7.97 (s, 1H), 7.98 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

15 Step D: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-(4-aminophenoxy)-1,1'-biphenyl, di(trifluoroacetate)

20 The intermediate obtained in Step C (140mg, 0.21mmol) was dissolved in 16mL of methanol and hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi over 20mg of 10% palladium on carbon for 2 hours. The catalyst was removed by filtration through Celite and
25 the filtrate evaporated under vacuum to yield 140mg of crude product which was used in the next step without purification.

The crude intermediate obtained above was converted to the title compound by treatment with
30 trifluoroacetic acid according to the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.38 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.32

- 244 -

(m,1H), 2.45-2.65 (m,4H), 4.41 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.88 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.25 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.90 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.09 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.15-7.50 (m,13H).

5

Example 101

3-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]phenylacetamide, trifluoroacetate

10

Step A: 3-(Bromomethyl)phenylacetonitrile

Prepared from 3-(methyl)phenylacetonitrile by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C. ¹H NMR (300MHz,CDCl₃): 3.73 (s,2H), 4.45 (s,2H), 7.24 (m,1H), 7.33 (m,3H).

15

Step B: 3-[[1-[[1-(Cyanomethyl)phenyl-3-yl]methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxopropylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

20

Prepared from 3-(bromomethyl)phenylacetonitrile and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ¹H NMR (400MHz,CDCl₃): 1.33 (s,3H), 1.34 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,9H), 1.83 (m,1H), 2.4-2.6 (m,5H), 3.65 (s,2H), 4.48 (m,1H), 4.86 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.12 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.23 (br s,1H), 6.60 (d,7Hz,1H), 7.1-7.3 (m,8H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₆N₄O₄ 504; found 505 (M+H,10%).

25

30

- 245 -

Step C: 3-[[3(R)-[(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]phenylacetamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 69, Step E. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CDCl₃): 1.32 (s, 6H), 1.39 (s, 9H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.6 (m, 5H), 3.46 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 3.50 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 4.48 (m, 1H), 4.93 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.07 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.49 (br s, 1H), 5.93 (br s, 1H), 6.65 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.25 (m, 8H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₈N₄O₄ 506; found 507 (M+H, 15%).

Step D: 3-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]phenylacetamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.30 (s, 3H), 1.33 (s, 3H), 2.07 (m, 1H), 2.26 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.6 (m, 4H), 3.39 (s, 2H), 4.33 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.11 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.08 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.2 (m, 5H), 7.25 (d, 2Hz, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₃H₂₈N₄O₃ 422; found 423 (M+H, 100%).

Example 102

3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

- 246 -

Step A: 3-[(2-(R)-Benzyloxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, trifluoro-
acetate

Prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and (R)-2-benzyloxylpropanal (prepared from ethyl-D-lactate according to the procedure of Hanessian and Kloss, Tetrahedron Lett. 1985, 26, 1261-1264.) by the procedure described in Example 86, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.25 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 6H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.32 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.17 (m, 1H), 3.80 (m, 1H), 4.40 (m, 1H), 4.44 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 4.64 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.02 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.7 (m, 15H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₉H₄₃N₇O₃ 657; found 658 (M+H, 100%).

Step B: 3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoro-
acetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 86, Step B. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.22 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.31 (m, 1H), 2.45-2.70 (m, 4H), 2.81 (dd; 10, 12Hz; 1H), 3.08 (dd; 4, 12Hz; 1H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.36 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.93 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.17

- 247 -

(d,15Hz,1H), 7.04 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.19 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.20-7.35 (m,4H), 7.54 (m,2H), 7.65 (m,2H).

FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{32}H_{37}N_7O_3$ 567; found 568
(M+H,45%).

5

Example 103

2-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
10 biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
propanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from 2-
amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
15 1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide, trifluoroacetate
(Example 63) and (R)-2-benzyloxypropanal (prepared
from ethyl-D-lactate according to the procedure of
Hanessian and Kloss, Tetrahedron Lett. 1985, 26,
1261-1264.) by the procedures described in Example
20 86. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.16 (d,6Hz,3H), 1.55
(s,3H), 1.64 (s,3H), 2.22 (m,2H), 2.49 (m,2H), 2.74
(dd;9,12Hz; 1H), 2.92 (dd;4,12Hz;1H), 3.94 (m,1H),
4.31 (m,1H), 4.88 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.17 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.98
(d,8Hz,2H), 7.16 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.2-7.4 (m,4H),
25 7.45-7.70 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 $C_{31}H_{35}N_7O_3$ 553; found 554 (M+H,45%).

30

- 248 -

Example 104

3-[(2(R)-Acetoxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
5 biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a stirred solution of 20mg (0.028mmol) of
3-[(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetr
ahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-
10 4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate (Example 102) in 2mL of methylene
chloride at room temperature was added 8.8mg of
acetic anhydride (3eq.) followed by 13mg (4eq.) of
4-dimethylaminopyridine. The mixture was stirred for
15 one hour then concentrated under vacuum and the
residue purified by reverse phase high pressure
liquid chromatography on C18, eluting with methanol/
0.1%aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (70:30) to afford
the title compound.

20 ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.30 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H),
1.39 (s, 3H), 2.01 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.29 (m, 1H),
2.4-2.7 (m, 4H), 3.15 (dd; 9, 13Hz; 1H), 3.25
(dd; 4, 13Hz; 1H), 4.36 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.9 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
5.07 (m, 1H), 5.19 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.04 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.19
25 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 4H), 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.65
(m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₄H₃₉N₇O₄ 609;
found 610 (M+H, 75%).

30

- 249 -

Example 105

3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)-
5 [1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-
(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-[(2-(R)-Benzyloxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-
N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-
10 methyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

Prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-methyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-b
15 iphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 16) by the
procedure described in Example 86, Step A. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.29 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 1.35 (s, 6H), 2.12
(m, 1H), 2.35 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 3.00
20 (dd; 9, 13Hz; 1H), 3.14 (s, 3H), 3.20 (m, 1H), 3.85
(m, 1H), 4.44 (m, 1H), 4.48 (d, 11Hz, 1H), 4.67
(d, 11Hz, 1H), 4.90 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.25 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00
(d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.5 (m, 12H), 7.6 (m, 2H), 7.75
(m, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₀H₄₅N₇O₃ 671;
25 found 672 (M+H, 100%).

30

- 250 -

Step B: 3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-methyl-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
5 trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 86, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.21 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.20-2.70 (m, 5H), 2.78 (dd; 10, 12Hz; 1H), 3.09 (dd; 4, 12Hz; 1H), 3.16 (s, 3H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.35 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.32 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.55-7.75 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₃ 581; found 582 (M+H, 100%).
15

Example 106

3-[(2(R)-Methoxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
20 trifluoroacetate

Step A: 2(R)-Methoxypropionaldehyde

25 To a solution of 1.00g (9.6mmol) of (R)-(+)-methyl lactate in 2 mL of methyl iodide was added 4.45g (19.2mmol) of silver (I) oxide and the resulting mixture heated at reflux for 2 hours. The mixture was cooled, filtered and the excess methyl
30 iodide removed under vacuum at 0°C to afford 0.5g of crude methyl [2(R)-methoxy]propionate which was used in the next step without purification.

- 251 -

To a stirred solution of 0.5g (4.2mmol) of the intermediate obtained above in 5mL of ether at 0°C was added 5.0mL of 1.0M solution of lithium aluminum hydride in ether over 5 minutes. The resulting mixture was treated with 1mL of 1N sodium hydroxide, filtered, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated under vacuum at 0°C to give 0.36g of crude 2(R)-methoxypropanol which was used directly in the next step.

To a stirred suspension of 2.7g (12.6mmol) of pyridinium chlorochromate on Celite (1g) in 8mL of methylene chloride was added 0.36g of crude 2(R)-methoxypropanol and the resulting mixture stirred at room temperature for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was filtered, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum at 0°C to give approximately 0.3g of crude product which was used in the next step without purification.

Step B: 3-[(2(R)-Methoxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and 2(R)-methoxypropionaldehyde (Step A) by the procedure described in Example 86, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.17 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.36 (br s, 6H), 2.11 (m, 1H), 2.31 (m, 1H), 2.45-2.65 (m, 4H), 2.87

- 252 -

(m,1H), 3.14 (m,1H), 3.31 (s,3H), 3.59 (m,1H), 4.37 (dd;7,11Hz;1H), 4.95 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.15 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.03 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.4 (m,6H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₃ 581; found 582.
5 (M+H,100%).

Example 107

10 3-[(2-Hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,-
3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 2-Benzyloxy-2-methyl-3-butene

15 To a stirred suspension of 18.6g of 60%
sodium hydride oil dispersion (0.46mol) in 50mL of
dry tetrahydrofuran at 0°C was added 40g (0.46mol) of
2-methyl-3-buten-2-ol over 30 minutes. The resulting
mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred
20 for 3 hours, then heated at reflux for an additional
30 minutes. The mixture was cooled to 0°C, treated
with 80g (0.46mol) of benzyl bromide, then heated at
reflux for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled,
filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue
25 was purified by distillation under reduced pressure
to give 42g (0.24mol,52%) of product, b.p. 88-89°C
(2mm). ¹H NMR (200MHz,CDCl₃): 1.38 (s,6H), 4.39
(s,2H), 5.20 (m,2H), 5.95 (m,1H), 7.2-7.4 (m,5H).

30

- 253 -

Step B: 2-Benzoyloxy-2-methylpropionaldehyde

A mixture of 100mL of water, 300mL of dioxane, 20g (0.11mol) of 2-benzoyloxy-2-methyl-3-butene and 1g of osmium tetroxide was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes then 51g (0.22mol) of finely ground sodium periodate was added in portions over 30 minutes. Stirring was continued for 2 hours then the mixture filtered and the filtrate extracted with several portions of ether. The combined extracts were dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum. Distillation afforded 7.3g (0.041mol, 37%) of product, b.p. 85-88°C (2mm).

Step C: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a solution of 150mg (0.40mmol) of 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) in 2mL of methylene chloride at 0°C was added 2mL of trifluoroacetic acid and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. All volatiles were removed under vacuum to give 130mg (0.33mmol, 84%) of the product.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 3H), 2.6-3.0 (m, 2H), 4.37 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 7.02 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.3 (m, 3H).

FAB-MS: calculated for C₁₅H₂₁N₃O₂ 275; found 276 (M+H, 100%).

- 254 -

Step D: 3-(2-Benzyloxy-2-methylpropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-(R)-yl]-butanamide

5 Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step C and 2-benzyloxy-2-methylpropionaldehyde by the procedure described in Example 86, Step A.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,9H), 2.10 (m,1H), 2.41 (m,1H), 2.65 (s,2H), 2.7-2.9 (m,2H), 3.09 (s,2H), 4.40 (m,1H), 4.48 (s,2H), 10 7.0-7.2 (m,4H), 7.2-7.4 (m,5H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₆H₃₅N₃O₃ 437; found 438 (M+H,100%).

Step E: 3-[(2-Benzyloxy-2-methylpropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide, 15 trifluoroacetate

To a stirred solution of 145mg (0.332mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step D in 2mL of dry dimethylformamide at room temperature under nitrogen 20 was added 67mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (1.67mmol,5eq.). After 30 minutes, a solution of 277mg (0.41mmol,1.2eq.) of N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethylbiphen-4-yl)] tetrazole in 2mL of dry 25 dimethylformamide was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was added to 100mL of ethyl acetate and washed with water (2x) and brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and 30 concentrated under vacuum.

- 255 -

The residue was dissolved in 5mL of methanol and treated with 5mL of 9N HCl. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours then washed with hexanes (5x) to remove triphenylmethanol. The aqueous layer was removed, filtered and evaporated under vacuum; the residue was purified by reverse phase medium pressure liquid chromatography on C8, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (65:35) to afford 245mg (0.31mmol, 94%) of product.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.38 (s, 9H), 2.10 (m, 1H), 2.31 (m, 1H), 2.4-2.7 (m, 2H), 2.66 (s, 1H), 4.39 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.50 (s, 2H), 4.94 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.99 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.05-7.25 (m, 5H), 7.25-7.45 (m, 6H), 7.55-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₀H₄₅N₇O₃ 671; found 672 (M+H, 100%).

Step F: 3-[(2-Hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 86, Step B.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.29 (s, 6H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 2.1-2.5 (m, 4H), 2.68 (s, 2H), 2.98 (s, 2H), 4.37 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.94 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.17 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.04 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.20 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.20-7.35 (m, 4H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₃ 581; found 582 (M+H, 70%).

- 256 -

Example 108

3-[(2(S)-Hydroxy-3-methylbutyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-
[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
5 yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-[(2(S)-Benzyloxy-3-methylbutyl)amino]-3-
methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
10 (1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

Prepared from 2(S)-benzyloxy-3-methylbutanal
(prepared from L-valine by the method of Li, et al;
15 J. Amer. Chem. Soc., 112, 7659 (1990)) and 3-amino-
3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetra-
zol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzaze-
pin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example
1), by the procedure described in Example 86, Step A.
20 ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.92 (d,7Hz, 3H), 0.98
(d,7Hz, 3H) 1.31 (s,3H), 1.38 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,5H),
2.62 (s,2H), 2.95 (dd;9,12Hz;1H), 3.15
(dd;3,12Hz;1H), 3.55 (m,1H), 4.40 (dd;7,11Hz;1H),
4.52 (d,12Hz,1H), 4.61 (d,12Hz,1H), 4.89 (d,15Hz,1H),
25 5.18 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.1-7.7 (m,15H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₄₁H₄₇N₇O₃ 685; found 687
(100%).

30

- 257 -

Step B: 3-[(2(S)-Hydroxy-3-methylbutyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

5

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 86, Step B.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.86 (d,7Hz,3H), 0.92 (d,7Hz,3H), 1.35 (s,3H), 1.40 (s,3H), 1.67 (m,1H), 2.0-2.6 (m,4H), 2.64 (s,2H), 2.82 (dd;10,12Hz,1H), 3.12 (dd;3,12Hz;1H), 3.48 (m,1H), 4.37 (dd;8,12Hz,1H), 4.9 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.19 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.04 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.15-7.35 (m,6H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H).

FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₄H₄₁N₇O₃ 595; found 597 (100%).

10

15

Example 109

3-[(2(R)-Hydroxy-3-methylbutyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

20

The title compound was prepared from D-valine and 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 1), by the procedures described in Example 108.

25

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.86 (d,7Hz,3H), 0.88 (d,7Hz,3H), 1.32 (s,3H), 1.33 (s,3H), 1.65 (m,1H), 2.00-2.66 (m,6H), 2.78 (dd;10,12Hz,1H), 3.10

30

- 258 -

(dd;2,12Hz;1H), 3.45 (m,1H), 4.34 (dd;8,12Hz,1H),
4.90 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.1 (d,15Hz,1H), 7.02 (d,8Hz,2H),
7.1-7.3 (m,6H), 7.45-7.70 (m,4H). FAB-MS:
calculated for $C_{34}H_{41}N_7O_3$ 595; found 597 (100%).

5

Example 110

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-
10 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
methyl]-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 2-Bromobiphenyl

A solution of 8.8mL of isoamyl nitrite in
15 120mL of benzene at 45°C was treated dropwise over 30
minutes with a solution of 7.5g of 2-bromoaniline in
30mL of benzene. After the addition was complete,
the mixture was heated at reflux for 90 minutes then
cooled and concentrated under vacuum. The product
20 was purified by preparative high pressure liquid
chromatography on silica, eluting with hexanes. 1H
NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 7.23 (m,2H), 7.35 (m,1H), 7.44
(s,5H), 7.70 (d,8Hz,1H).

25 Step B: 4'-Methyl-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 2-bromobiphenyl and 4-
methylphenyltrimethylstannane by the procedure
described in Example 69, Step B.

1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 2.30 (s,3H), 7.06 (s,4H),
30 7.23 (m,5H), 7.44 (s,4H).

- 259 -

Step C: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 4'-methyl-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C.

5

Step D: 4'-[[3(R)-[(3-Amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)-amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl, trifluoroacetate

10

The title compound was prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) and 4'-bromomethyl-2-phenyl-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedures described in Example 69, Steps D and

15

F. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s, 3H), 1.36 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.6 (m, 6H), 4.37 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.78 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.28 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 6.95-7.45 (m, 17H).

Example 111

20

3-[[2-Hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-propyl]amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25

Step A: Ethyl 2-hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-propionate

30

To a stirred solution of 0.5g (2.74mmol) of D,L 3-(4-hydroxyphenyl) lactic acid hydrate in 10mL of ethanol was added a catalytic amount of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The mixture was heated at reflux for 2 hours then cooled to room

- 260 -

temperature and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in 50mL of ether and washed with saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate (1x50mL) and brine (1x50mL). The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and evaporated under vacuum to afford 0.54g (2.57mmol, 94%) of the ethyl ester. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.26 (t, 7Hz, 3H), 2.86 (dd; 7, 14Hz; 1H), 3.03 (dd; 4, 14Hz; 1H), 4.19 (q, 7Hz, 2H), 4.38 (dd; 4, 7Hz; 1H), 5.60 (br s, 1H), 6.66 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.03 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

Step B: Ethyl 2-(t-butyldimethylsiloxy)-3-[4-(t-butyldimethylsiloxyphenyl)]propionate

To a stirred solution of 0.57g (7.4mmol) of ethyl 2-hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)propionate in 10mL of methylene chloride at -78°C was added 2mL of 2,6-lutidine (4eq.) followed by 2.52mL of t-butyldimethylsilyl trifluoromethanesulfonate (4eq.). The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 16 hours. The reaction mixture was diluted with 50mL of methylene chloride and washed with 10% hydrochloric acid (2x100mL), saturated aqueous sodium bicarbonate and brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to give 1.12g of crude product. A 250mg sample was purified by preparative thin layer chromatography on silica, eluting with hexane/ethyl acetate (90:10) to afford 210mg of pure product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.13 (s, 6H), 0.76 (s, 9H), 0.94 (s, 9H), 2.76 (dd; 10, 14Hz; 1H), 2.97 (dd; 4, 14Hz; 1H), 4.24 (dd; 4, 10Hz; 1H), 6.73 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 2H).

- 261 -

Step C: 2-(t-Butyldimethylsiloxy)-3-[4-(t-butyl-dimethylsiloxyphenyl)]propanal

To a stirred solution of 210mg (0.48mmol) of ethyl 2-(t-butyldimethylsiloxy)-3-[4-(t-butyldimethylsiloxyphenyl)]propionate in 10mL of ether at -78°C was added dropwise over 5 minutes 1mL of 1.0M solution of diisobutylaluminum hydride in hexane (2eq.). The reaction mixture was poured, with rapid stirring, into 50mL of 10% hydrochloric acid. After stirring for 5 minutes, the mixture was extracted with ether (2x30mL) and the combined extracts dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to give approximately 200mg of the product which was used immediately and without further purification.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 0.14 (s, 6H), 0.80 (s, 9H), 0.95 (s, 9H), 2.76 (dd; 10, 14Hz; 1H), 2.90 (dd; 4, 14Hz; 1H), 4.24 (ddd; 2, 4, 10Hz; 1H), 6.73 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.02 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 9.61 (d, 2Hz, 1H).

Step D: 3-[(2-Hydroxy-3-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-propyl)-amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared as a mixture of two diastereomers from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate (Example 1) and 2-(t-butyldimethylsiloxy)-3-[4-(t-butyldimethylsiloxyphenyl)]propanal (Step C) by the procedure described in Example 86, Step A.

- 262 -

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (m, 6H), 2.10 (m, 1H),
 2.29 (m, 1H), 2.40-2.75 (m, 6H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 3.07
 (m, 1H), 3.90 (m, 1H), 4.33 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.9 (m, 1H),
 5.1 (m, 1H), 6.67 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.02 (m, 4H), 7.15-7.35
 5 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated for
 C₃₈H₄₁N₇O₄ 659; found 659 (40%).

Example 112

10 3-[[2(R)-Hydroxy-2-phenylpropyl]amino]-3-methyl-N-
 [2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
 yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
 3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

15 Step A: 2(R)-Benzyloxy-2-phenylacetaldehyde

Prepared from (R)-(-)-mandelic acid by the
 procedures described in Example 111 (Steps A, C) and
 Example 107, Step A.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 4.51 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 4.65
 20 (d, 12Hz, 1H), 4.77 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.35 (m, 10H), 9.61
 (d, 2Hz, 1H).

Step B: 3-[(2(R)-Benzyloxy-2-phenylethyl)amino]-3-
 methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(
 25 (1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
 methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
 trifluoroacetate

Prepared 2(R)-benzyloxy-2-phenyl acetaldehyde
 and 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
 30 [[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
 1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate
 (Example 1) by the procedure described in Example 86,
 Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 6H), 2.12

- 263 -

(m,1H), 2.32 (m,1H), 2.5-2.7 (m,4H), 3.22 (m,2H),
4.32 (d,12Hz,1H), 4.43 (d,12Hz,1H), 4.45 (m,1H), 4.67
(t,7Hz,1H), 4.99 (d,14Hz,1H), 5.13 (d,14Hz,1H), 7.02
(d,8Hz,2H), 7.10-7.45 (m,16H), 7.5-7.7 (m,4H).

5 FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{44}H_{45}N_7O_3$ 719; found 720
(M+H,35%).

Step C: 3-[[2(R)-Hydroxy-2-phenylpropyl]amino]-
3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
10 [[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
amide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the
intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure
described in Example 86, Step B.
15 1H NMR (400MHz, CD_3OD): 1.38 (s,3H), 1.39 (s,3H),
2.10 (m,1H), 2.3 (m,1H), 2.4-2.7 (m,4H), 3.05 (m,1H),
3.22 (m,1H), 4.39 (m,1H), 4.95 (d,15Hz,1H), 5.18
(d,15Hz,1H), 7.08 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.20-7.45 (m,11H),
20 7.5-7.7 (m,4H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{37}H_{39}N_7O_3$
629; found 630 (M+H,85%).

Example 113

25 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride,
dihydrate

30 Step A: 1-Tetralone oxime

To 4.6L of water at room temperature in a
4-neck 50L flask sitting in a steam bath apparatus

- 264 -

equipped with an overhead stirrer, a temperature probe and reflux condenser was added 3.72Kg (27.36mol) of sodium acetate with stirring, followed by 1.9Kg of hydroxylamine hydrochloride (27.36mol).
5 To this slurry at room temperature, 12L of ethanol was added followed by 1.994Kg (13.68mol) of 1-tetralone. Additional ethanol (1.7L) was used to rinse off the funnel and added to the reaction mixture. The resulting light orange slurry was
10 heated to 75°C over 40 minutes and maintained at 75-85°C for another 75 minutes. The reaction mixture was cooled with the aid of ice packed around the flask. When the internal temperature reached 32°C, the reaction mixture was pumped over 15 minutes into
15 60L of ice contained in a 200L vessel. The reaction vessel was washed with an additional 2L of water which was added to the 200L vessel. When the ice melted, the mixture was filtered through a filter pad and the wet cake washed with 4L of water. The wet
20 cake was suction dried for 1 hour then transferred to two trays and dried under vacuum at 40°C for 2 days to give 2.094Kg (13.01mol, 95%) of product.
¹H NMR (250MHz, CDCl₃): 1.90 (m, 2H), 2.80 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.88 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.90 (d, 8Hz, 1H),
25 8.9 (br s, 1H).

Step B: 2,3,4,5-Tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

To 10L of methanesulfonic acid in a 22L 3-neck flask equipped with an overhead stirrer, a
30 temperature probe, nitrogen inlet and reflux condenser was added 2.6Kg (18.61mol) of phosphorus pentoxide. An additional 1.6L of methanesulfonic

- 265 -

acid was used to wash all the phosphorus pentoxide into the vessel. The mixture was heated at 90°C for 2.5 hours then cooled to 50°C using an ice bath and treated with 2.00Kg (12.41mol) of 1-tetralone oxime in several portions over 15 minutes. The mixture was heated at 63°C for 10 minutes then slowly heated to 80°C and kept at 80°C for 3 hours. The reaction mixture was pumped into 70L of ice then treated slowly with 11.25L of 50% aqueous sodium hydroxide over 90 minutes at such a rate so as to maintain the temperature below 28°C. The mixture was filtered and 4L of the filtrate was used to rinse the vessel. The wet cake (pink) was washed with 8L of water then suction dried for 45 minutes then transferred to two trays and dried under vacuum at 40°C for 2 days to give 1.9Kg (11.79mol, 95%) of product. ¹H NMR (250MHz, CDCl₃): 2.24 (m, 2H), 2.38 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 2.82 (t, 6Hz, 2H), 7.03 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.13 (m, 1H), 7.24 (m, 2H), 8.63 (br s, 1H).

Step C: 3-Iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A suspension of 1.8Kg (11.17mol) of 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one in a mixture of 22.33L of methylene chloride and 11.78L (55.83mol) of hexamethyldisilazane was heated at reflux for 10 minutes then cooled to 30°C and treated with 8.503Kg (33.5mol) of iodine in one portion. The mixture was heated at reflux for 2.5 hours then cooled to room temperature. Aqueous sodium sulfite containing 4.926Kg of sodium sulfite in 44L of water was cooled

- 266 -

to 0°C and into it was poured the reaction mixture in several portions with vigorous stirring while maintaining the temperature below 10°C. The reaction vessel was rinsed with 3L of methylene chloride and the washing transferred to the quenching mixture. Methylene chloride (17L) was added to the quenching mixture and it was stirred vigorously and the layers allowed to separate. The aqueous layer was removed and reextracted with 12L of methylene chloride. The combined organic layers were washed with 11L of water and concentrated under vacuum to a final volume of approximately 5L. The residue was treated with 55L of toluene and concentrated under vacuum to a final volume of 10L. The resulting slurry was removed by filtration and the filter cake washed with an additional 5L of toluene and dried under vacuum at ambient temperature for 24 hours to give 1.842Kg (6.42mol, 57%) of product.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.6-2.8 (m, 3H), 2.93 (m, 1H), 4.64 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 3H), 7.55 (br s, 1H).

Step D: 3(R)-Amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one, D-tartrate
3-Iodo-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one (1.79Kg, 6.24mol) was slurried in 6.2L of methanol and the slurry charged into an autoclave. Condensed ammonia (1.55L) was added and the autoclave closed, with stirring, and heated to 100°C over 1 hour. Heating at 100°C was continued for 2 hours then the autoclave was allowed to cool to room

- 267 -

temperature over 1 hour, during which time the internal pressure was 150-155psi. The reaction mixture was transferred to a polyethylene jug and the autoclave rinsed with 2x8L of methanol. The washings were concentrated under vacuum at 30°C then combined with the reaction mixture and concentrated to near dryness under vacuum at 30°C. The resulting residue was dissolved in 4L of ethyl acetate then concentrated to dryness under vacuum at 30°C.

Sodium chloride (712g) was dissolved in 2L of water and 1.0Kg of sodium carbonate was dissolved in 6L of water. Two liters of the sodium carbonate solution was added to the concentrated residue and the resulting slurry transferred to an extraction flask. Another 2L portion of the sodium carbonate solution was added to the residue flask and the solution transferred to the extraction flask. The remaining sodium carbonate solution was used in the same way. The sodium chloride solution was added to the sodium carbonate/aminolactam emulsion and the resulting mixture stirred for 10 minutes then extracted with four 6L portions of methylene chloride. The combined methylene chloride layers were concentrated to dryness; the residue was treated with 2L of 200 proof ethanol and the resulting slurry concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 1.171Kg of crude product.

The crude product was slurried in 8L of ethanol and treated with 900g of D-tartaric acid in one portion. Water (7L) was added and the mixture heated to 77°C, then additional ethanol (45L) was added and heating continued. The solution was cooled

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 268 -

to 43°C and treated with the seed slurry. (The seed slurry was prepared by the route described above starting with 10.50g of crude product and 9.1g of D-tartaric acid.) The solution was aged at room
5 temperature for 48 hours. The slurry formed was removed by filtration and the wet cake washed with 1.8L of ethanol. The resulting filter cake was suction dried with nitrogen bleeding for 20 hours then transferred into a drying tray and dried under
10 vacuum for 24 hours to give 354g (1.085mol, 17.4%) of the product. ¹H NMR (250MHz, CDCl₃): 2.13 (m, 1H), 2.51 (m, 2H), 2.73 (m, 2H), 3.68 (t, 6Hz, 1H), 3.98 (s, 2H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.16 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.6 (br s, 5H), 10.26 (br s, 1H).

15

Step E: 3(R)-Amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A solution of 229.23g (0.700mol) of 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one,
20 D-tartrate in 4.1L of water was treated with 194g (1.40mol) of potassium carbonate. Subsequent portions of 100g and 135g of potassium carbonate were added until the pH was 10.5. The mixture was extracted with four 4L portions of methylene chloride
25 which were then combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. The aqueous layer was treated with 1.4Kg of sodium chloride and reextracted with four 4L portions of methylene chloride which were then combined and dried over magnesium sulfate. The two 16L batches of
30 extracts were combined, filtered and concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 115.5g of product which contained 1.6% of an impurity identified as 7-iodo-3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 269 -

A solution of 107.02g (0.607mol) of the intermediate obtained above in 1.712L of ethanol was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi over 4.00g of 10% palladium on carbon for 4 hours. The catalyst
5 was removed by filtration through solkaflok and the filtrate concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 101.08g (0.574mol, 94.4%) of product.

Step F: N-Chlorosulfonyl-4,4-dimethylazetidin-2-one

10 To a 3-neck 12L flask equipped with an overhead stirrer, a 250mL addition funnel topped with a nitrogen inlet and a rubber septum to allow a temperature probe and isobutylene needle was charged 450mL of isobutylene. The flask was cooled in a dry
15 ice-acetone bath. Ethyl ether (450mL) was added and the resulting solution at -60°C was treated with 210mL (2.41mol) of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate over 5 minutes at a rate so as to maintain the internal temperature below -50°C. The mixture was stirred at
20 -50°C to -62°C for 30 minutes then allowed to warm slowly to room temperature and treated with 2250mL of ether. The resulting solution was treated with 750mL of 10% aqueous sodium carbonate slowly in 3 portions. The mixture was transferred into a 4L
25 separatory funnel and the aqueous layer removed. The organic layer was washed with 500mL of water, then removed and treated with 750mL of hexane. As crystallization began, additional hexane (250mL) was added and the mixture concentrated under partial
30 vacuum to a final volume of 3100mL. The solid that formed was removed by filtration with the aid of 200mL of hexane for rinsing. After air drying, the

- 270 -

wet cake was dried under vacuum at 40°C overnight to give 253g (1.28mol, 53%) of product as a pale yellow crystalline solid. Recycling of the mother liquors gave an additional 100g (19%) of product as a white crystalline solid. ¹H NMR (250MHz, CDCl₃): 1.89 (s, 6H), 3.05 (s, 2H).

Step G: 3-Methoxysulfonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

A suspension of 98.31g (0.530mol) of 3(R)-amino-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one in 1600mL of methanol at room temperature was treated with 155mL (1.112mol) of triethylamine. The resulting suspension was cooled to 0°C and treated with a solution of 110.01g (0.557mol) of N-chlorosulfonyl-4,4-dimethylazetidin-2-one in 960mL of methanol over 20 minutes maintaining the internal temperature below 10°C. Additional methanol (100mL) was used to rinse the flask and the rinse was transferred into the reaction vessel. The reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 90 minutes.

The reaction mixture was concentrated under vacuum to a slurry (600mL) which was diluted with 3180mL of ethyl acetate and treated with 1L of saturated aqueous ammonium chloride and 1L of water. The organic layer was separated, washed with 2L of 1:1 saturated aqueous ammonium chloride/water then 2L of brine. The organic layer was removed and concentrated under vacuum to a final volume of 1.6L.

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 271 -

The resulting slurry was treated with 1.6L of hexane and then aged at room temperature for 2.5 hours. The solid was removed by filtration and the cake washed with 1L of hexane. The material was air dried at
5 40°C for 48 hours to give 163.81g (0.444mol, 83.7%) of product as a white solid.

¹H NMR (250MHz, CDCl₃): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.42 (s, 3H), 2.04 (m, 1H), 2.37 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.58 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.69
10 (m, 2H), 2.95 (m, 1H), 3.81 (s, 3H), 4.55 (m, 1H), 6.83 (m, 2H), 7.01 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.25 (m, 3H), 8.20 (br s, 1H).

Step H: 3-Methoxysulfonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
15

To a suspension of 155.0g (0.4197mol) of the intermediate obtained in Step G in 800mL of tetrahydrofuran was added 140mL of dimethylformamide
20 and the resulting solution cooled to 0° to -5°C and treated with 19.1g of 95% sodium hydride (0.796mol). Additional tetrahydrofuran (40mL) was used to rinse the addition funnel. The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at 0°C then treated with a solution of 269.0g
25 (0.4825mol) of N-triphenylmethyl-5-[2-(4'-bromomethyl-biphen-4-yl)] in 800mL of tetrahydrofuran over 20 minutes. After the addition was complete, the reaction mixture was warmed to room temperature and stirred for 5 hours. An additional 1.0g of 95%
30 sodium hydride was added and stirring continued for another 3.5 hours.

- 272 -

The reaction mixture was poured into a mixture of 3L of ethyl acetate and 2.5L of water. Additional water (300mL) and ethyl acetate (500mL) were used for rinsing. The aqueous layer was removed and the organic layer washed with 2L of brine. The organic layer was separated, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to a viscous oil. The oil was further concentrated under vacuum to form a pale yellow solid which was purified by chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/hexanes (1:1 to 3:1) to afford 330.6g (0.3908mol, 89.3%) of product as a white solid.

Step I: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(hydrochloride), di(hydrate)

To 900mL of hot (70°C) ethanol was added, with vigorous stirring, 190.0g (0.2246mol) of the intermediate obtained in Step H by a solid addition funnel. Additional ethanol (50mL) was used to rinse the funnel. To the clear solution at 70°C was added 380mL of 6N hydrochloric acid over 10 minutes. The mixture was stirred at 70°C for 4.5 hours then allowed to cool to room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into a mixture of 1900mL of water and 3L of ethyl acetate/hexane (2:1). The aqueous layer was removed and washed with 3L of ethyl acetate/hexane (2:1) then 2.5L of hexane. The aqueous layer was separated and filtered, then concentrated under vacuum at 40°C to a final volume of 3500mL and allowed to age overnight at ambient temperature. The white suspension was removed by

- 273 -

filtration and the wet cake washed with 250mL of a solution of 15mL of concentrated hydrochloric acid in 500mL of water. The product was dried under vacuum at 35-40°C overnight then allowed to equilibrate in ambient humidity to give 110.25g (0.1894mol, 90.7%) of the title compound as a white powdery solid. ¹H NMR (250MHz, CD₃OD): 1.36 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 2.12 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.50 (m, 2H), 2.55 (m, 2H), 4.36 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.87 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.21 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (m, 2H), 7.17 (m, 2H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.31 (m, 2H), 7.51 (m, 1H), 7.53 (m, 1H), 7.61 (m, 2H).

Example 114

3-[(2,2-Dimethyl-1,3-dioxolane-4(S)-yl)methyl]amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, mono(trifluoroacetate)

To a stirred solution of 116mg (0.20mmol) of 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride, dihydrate (Example 113) in 5mL of dry methanol was added 0.5g of dry 3A powdered molecular sieves followed by a solution of 131mg (1.0mmol) of D-glyceraldehyde acetonide (used crude as prepared according to the procedure of Hertel, L.W.; Grossman, C. S.; Kroin, J.S. Synth. Comm. 1991, 21, 151-154) in 1mL of dry methanol. The pH of the mixture was carefully adjusted to 6.5 with glacial acetic acid and triethylamine. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 3 hours at which time 1.0mL (1.0mmol)

- 274 -

of a 1.0M solution of sodium cyanoborohydride in tetrahydrofuran was added dropwise by syringe. The reaction was stirred overnight then filtered through a pad of Celite. The filtrate was diluted with 50% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid and stirred for 3 hours at room temperature. The solution was concentrated under vacuum and the residue purified by preparative reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient; 60% methanol to 85% methanol over 10 minutes). The title compound was thus obtained in addition to the faster eluting major product 3-(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35-1.40 (m, 12H), 2.05-2.75 (m, 6H), 3.01 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 3.26 (dd; 3, 12Hz; 1H), 3.78 (dd; 5, 10Hz; 1H), 4.15 (dd; 6, 8Hz; 1H), 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz; 1H), 5.15 (d, 15Hz; 1H), 7.03 (d, 8Hz; 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H).

Example 115

3-(2(S),3-Dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride, dihydrate (Example 113) and D-glyceraldehyde acetonide by the procedure described in Example 114.

-275-

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H),
2.05-2.75 (m, 6H), 2.95 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 3.19
(dd; 3, 11Hz; 1H), 3.56 (m, 2H), 3.84 (m, 1H), 4.35
5 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.93 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.16 (d, 15Hz, 1H),
7.04 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.15-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₂H₃₇N₇O₄ 583; found 585
(100%).

10

Example 116

3-(2(S),3(S),4-Trihydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,-
4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butan-
15 amide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride,
20 dihydrate (Example 113) and 5(S)-t-butyldimethylsil-
yloxymethyl-2,2-dimethyl-1,3-dioxolan-4(R)-carboxal-
dehyde (Example 82) by the procedure described in
Example 71. ¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.36 (s, 3H),
1.40 (s, 3H), 2.09 (m, 1H), 2.30 (m, 1H), 2.46 (m, 1H),
25 2.57 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 2.64 (s, 2H), 3.13 (m, 2H), 3.59
(br s, 3H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 4.35 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.9
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.02 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.18
(d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.22 (m, 2H), 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.53 (m, 2H),
7.63 (m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₅
30 613; found 614 (100%).

-276-

Example 117

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1-benzyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
5 1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

To a stirred solution of 174mg (0.20mmol) of 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride, dihydrate (Example 113) in 3mL of tetrahydrofuran and 1mL of dimethylformamide was added 0.22mL (5eq.) of triethylamine followed by 0.043mL (1.2eq.) of benzyl bromide. The mixture was stirred for 2 hours at room temperature then concentrated under vacuum. Initial
15 purification by reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (75:25) afforded a major product (1-benzyl isomer) followed by a minor product (2-benzyl isomer). Repurification of each product by
20 reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (70:30) afforded 9mg of the title compound in addition to 8mg of the 2-benzyl isomer. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H),
25 2.05-2.65 (m, 6H), 4.38 (dd; 7.11Hz; 1H), 4.82 (d, 1.5Hz, 1H), 4.85 (s, 2H), 5.35 (d, 1.5Hz, 1H), 6.77 (dd; 2.8Hz; 2H), 6.94 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.1-7.8 (m, 13H).
FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₆H₃₇N₇O₂ 599; found 601 (100%).

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-277-

Example 118

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(2-benzyltetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
5 1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
10 benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride,
dihydrate (Example 113) and benzyl bromide by the
procedure described in Example 117.

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H),
2.00-2.65 (m, 6H), 4.40 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.88
15 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.74 (s, 2H), 6.96
(d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.10 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.25 (m, 3H), 7.30-7.65
(m, 9H), 7.73 (dd; 2, 7Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for
C₃₆H₃₇N₇O₂ 599; found 601 (100%).

20

Example 119

3-(3(R)-Hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
25 trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride,
30 dihydrate (Example 113) and 3(R)-hydroxybutanal-0-
tetrahydropyranyl ether (prepared from methyl
3(R)-hydroxybutyrate by the method of Sato:
Heterocycles, 24, 2173 (1986)) by the procedure
described in Example 71.

-278-

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.12 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.33 (s, 3H),
1.36 (s, 3H), 1.70 (m, 3H), 2.00-2.60 (m, 5H), 3.09
(m, 2H), 3.82 (m, 1H), 4.34 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.85
5 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.18 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
7.1-7.3 (m, 6H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 4H). FAB-MS: calculated
for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₃ 581; found 583 (100%).

Example 120

10

3-(3(S)-Hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-
4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate

15

The title compound was prepared from 3-
amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-
benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride,
dihydrate (Example 113) and 3(S)-hydroxybutanal-0-
20 tetrahydropyranyl ether (prepared from methyl
3(S)-hydroxybutyrate by the method of Sato:
Heterocycles, 24, 2173 (1986)) by the procedure
described in Example 71.

25

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.15 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.33 (s, 3H),
1.36 (s, 3H), 1.70 (m, 3H), 1.9-2.6 (m, 5H), 3.10
(m, 2H), 3.84 (m, 1H), 4.33 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.85
(d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.19 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H),
7.10-7.35 (m, 6H), 7.45-7.70 (m, 4H). FAB-MS:

30

calculated for C₃₃H₃₉N₇O₃ 581; found 583 (100%).

-279-

Example 121

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[3-bromo-2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, tri-fluoroacetate

Step A: 2-Bromo-4-iodotoluene

A well stirred solution of 18.6g (0.10mol) of 3-bromo-p-toluidine in 80mL of 6N HCl at 0°C was treated with a solution of 7.35g (0.11mol) of sodium nitrite in 15mL of water at a rate that maintained the temperature <10°C. The mixture was stirred for 45 minutes then cautiously treated with 33.2g (0.20mol) of potassium iodide at 0°C. The mixture was treated with 300mL of ether and washed (3x) with saturated aqueous sodium bisulfite. The organic layer was separated, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 50mL of hexane, filtered through 30g of silica and concentrated under vacuum to afford 15.6g (0.053mol, 53%) of the product which was determined to be 65% pure by ¹H NMR. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.33 (s, 3H), 6.97 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.51 (dd; 2, 8Hz, 1H), 7.86 (d, 2Hz, 1H).

Step B: 2'-[(N-Triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl]-2-bromo-1-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 6.0g (15mmol) of 5-phenyl-2-trityltetrazole (Example 1, Step H) in 60mL of tetrahydrofuran at -15°C to -10°C was treated with 6.5mL of 2.5M n-butyllithium in hexane

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-280-

(16.3mmol, 1.05eq) and the resulting mixture stirred for 1.5 hours at -5°C to -10°C then treated with 9.2mL of 1.0M solution of zinc chloride in ether (9.2mmol, 0.6eq). The mixture was warmed to room temperature and treated with: 0.3g of bis(triphenylphosphine) nickel dichloride, 0.3mL of a 3M solution of methylmagnesium chloride in tetrahydrofuran and finally, a solution of 8.5g (29mmol) of 2-bromo-4-iodotoluene in 12mL of tetrahydrofuran. The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature then treated with an additional 1.5g of 2-bromo-4-iodotoluene and heated briefly to 40°C . The mixture was cooled and partitioned between ether and saturated citric acid. The organic layer was separated, washed with brine (2x), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was dissolved in methylene chloride, passed through a short plug of silica, and concentrated under vacuum. The gummy residue was dissolved in ether and treated with an equal volume of hexane to precipitate the product. By this method, 4.3g (7.7mmol, 51%) of product was obtained as a white powder. ^1H NMR (400MHz, CDCl_3): 2.29 (s, 3H), 6.83 (t, 8Hz, 2H), 6.89 (d, 8Hz, 6H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 11H), 7.45 (m, 2H), 7.92 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H).

30

-281-

Step C 2'-[(N-Triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl]-2-bromo-1-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step B by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 4.48 (s, 2H), 6.85-7.05 (m, 8H), 7.20-7.55 (m, 13H), 8.03 (m, 1H). ¹H NMR indicates the product thus obtained contains approximately 20% starting material.

Step D: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[3-bromo-2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) and 2'-[(N-triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl]-2-bromo-1-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.43 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.55 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.5-2.8 (m, 3H), 4.57 (m, 1H), 4.97 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.14 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.31 (br s, 1H), 6.66 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.95-7.15 (m, 13H), 7.20-7.40 (m, 10H), 7.46 (m, 2H), 7.93 (m, 1H).

Step E: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[3-bromo-2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 31, Step H.

-282-

¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.32 (s,3H), 1.37 (s,3H)
2.0-2.9 (m,6H), 4.40 (dd;8,12Hz;1H), 4.90
(d,15Hz,1H), 5.26 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.96 (dd;2,8Hz,1H),
5 7.10-7.45 (m,6H), 7.45-7.70 (m,4H). FAB-MS:
calculated for C₂₉H₃₀BrN₇O₂ 587,589; found 589
(98%); 591 (100%).

Example 122

10

3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[3-bromo-2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1
'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide, hydrochloride

15

Step A: 3-[2(R)-Benzyloxypropyl]amino-3-methyl-N-[2,
3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
20 tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide,
trifluoroacetate (Example 107, Step C) and (R)-2-
benzyloxypropanal (prepared from ethyl-D-lactate
according to the procedure of Hanessian and Kloss,
Tetrahedron Lett. 1985, 26, 1261-1264.) by the
25 procedure described in Example 86, Step A. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.31 (d,6Hz,3H), 1.40 (s,3H), 1.43
(s,3H), 2.17 (m,1H), 2.30 (m,1H), 2.6-3.1 (m,5H),
3.22 (dd;3,12Hz;1H), 3.86 (m,1H), 4.48
(dd;7,12Hz;1H), 4.50 (d,12Hz,1H), 4.70 (d,12Hz,1H),
30 7.11 (d,8Hz,1H), 7.15-7.45 (m,8H). FAB-MS:
calculated for C₂₅H₃₃N₃O₃ 423; found 424 (M+H,100%).

-283-

Step B: 3-[2(R)-Hydroxypropyl]amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

A solution of 750mg (1.40mmol) of the
5 intermediate obtained in Step A in methanol containing 2 drops of trifluoroacetic acid was hydrogenated at room temperature and 40psi in the presence of 300mg of 30% palladium on carbon for 3 days. The catalyst was removed by filtration through
10 Celite and the filtrate concentrated under vacuum to give 600mg (1.34mmol, 96%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.22 (d, 7Hz, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 2.14 (m, 1H), 2.3-3.0 (m, 6H), 3.09 (dd; 2, 11Hz; 1H), 3.93 (m, 1H), 4.38 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H),
15 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 3H).

Step C: 3-[2(R)-Triethylsiloxypropyl]amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

20 To a stirred solution of 660mg (1.48mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step B in 3mL of methylene chloride at room temperature was added 1.1mL of N,N-diisopropylethylamine (0.81g, 4.2eq.) followed by 0.71mL of triethylsilyl trifluoromethane-sulfonate (0.83g, 2.1eq.). The resulting mixture was
25 stirred at room temperature for 2 hours then partitioned between ethyl acetate and saturated aqueous sodium chloride (buffered to pH 9 with 2 drops of ammonium hydroxide). The organic layer was
30 separated, washed with buffered brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents evaporated under vacuum. The residue was purified by

-284-

preparative high pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with ethyl acetate/0.1% ammonium hydroxide in methanol (85:15), to afford 480mg (1.07mmol, 72%) of product. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CD₃OD): 0.63 (q, 8Hz, 6H), 0.97 (t, 8Hz, 9H), 1.14 (s, 6H), 1.18 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 2.05 (m, 1H), 2.28 (d, 2Hz, 2H), 2.35-3.00 (m, 5H), 4.01 (m, 1H), 4.44 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 7.05 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.35 (m, 3H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₄H₄₁N₃O₃Si 447; found 448 (M+H, 100%).

Step D: 3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[3-bromo-2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

To a stirred solution of 94mg (0.21mmol) of the intermediate obtained in Step C in 0.5mL of dimethylformamide was added 6mg of 60% sodium hydride oil dispersion (3.6mg NaH, 1.2eq.). The resulting solution was stirred for 15 minutes then treated with a solution of 201mg (0.31mmol, 1.5eq.) of 2'-[(N-Triphenylmethyl)tetrazol-5-yl]-2-bromo-1-bromo-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl (Example 121, Step C) in 0.5mL of dimethylformamide. The resulting solution was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours then added to 50mL of ethyl acetate and washed with brine (2x). The organic layer was separated, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum.

The residue was dissolved in 2mL of methanol and treated with 10mL of 9N HCl and 10mL of hexane. This mixture was stirred vigorously for 2 hours then the layers allowed to separate. The aqueous layer

-285-

was removed by pipet, washed once with hexane, filtered and evaporated under vacuum. The residue was triturated with methanol to give a white solid that was removed by filtration. Thus, 101mg
5 (0.15mmol, 71%) of the title compound was obtained as a white solid. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.23 (d, 6Hz, 3H), 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.41 (s, 3H), 2.24 (m, 1H), 2.40 (m, 1H), 2.61 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.69 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 2.7-3.0 (m, 5H), 3.13 (dd; 3, 11Hz; 1H), 3.96 (m, 1H),
10 4.47 (dd; 7, 12Hz; 1H), 4.9 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.38 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.17 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.25-7.40 (m, 3H), 7.45 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.48 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.64 (m, 2H), 7.74 (m, 2H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{32}\text{H}_{36}\text{BrN}_7\text{O}_3$ 645, 647; found 646(50%), 648(55%).

15

Example 123

3'-Bromo-4'-[[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl) amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl] methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate
20 methyll[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3'-Bromo-4'-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile

A solution of 5.2g (27mmol) of 4'-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile (Example 69, Step B) in 60mL
25 of methylene chloride at 0°C was treated with 6.7g of silver trifluoroacetate (30mmol). When all the silver trifluoroacetate was dissolved, 1.6mL of bromine was added dropwise (4.95g, 31mmol) with vigorous stirring. After two hours, the reaction
30 mixture was filtered and the solid washed with methylene chloride. The combined organic layers were washed once with dilute (<1N) aqueous sodium

-286-

hydroxide and once with brine. The organic layer was removed, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated under vacuum. The residue was purified by preparative high pressure liquid chromatography on silica, eluting with 10% ether/hexane to give 3g (41%) of product. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 2.46 (s, 3H), 7.2-7.8 (m, 7H).

10 Step B: 3'-Bromo-4'-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 69, Step C. NMR analysis shows product to contain small amounts of starting material and dibromomethyl compound. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 4.64 (s, 2H), 7.4-7.8 (m, 7H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_9\text{Br}_2\text{N}$ 351; found 352 (100%); 271 (100%)

20 Step C: 3-[[1-[[3-Bromo-2'-cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]amino]-1,1-dimethyl-3-oxo-propylcarbamic acid, 1,1-dimethylethyl ester

Prepared from 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide (Example 57, Step A) and 3'-bromo-4'-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile by the procedure described in Example 69, Step D. ^1H NMR (200MHz, CDCl_3): 1.33 (s, 3H), 1.34 (s, 3H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 2.43 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.55 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 2.55-2.90 (m, 3H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 4.95 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.28 (s, 1H), 5.34 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 6.63 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.10-7.25 (m, 4H), 7.45 (m, 4H), 7.64

-287-

(m,1H), 7.75 (m,2H). FAB-MS (Li spike): calculated for $C_{34}H_{37}BrN_4O_4$ 644, 646; found 651 (13%); 653 (15%).

5 Step D: 3'-Bromo-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

The title compound was prepared from the
10 intermediate obtained in Step C by the procedure described in Example 69, Step E. 1H NMR (200MHz, $CDCl_3$): 1.34 (br s, 6H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.93 (m, 1H), 2.43 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 2.56 (d, 13Hz, 1H), 2.55-2.90 (m, 3H), 4.62 (m, 1H), 4.96 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.30
15 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.34 (br s, 1H), 5.65 (br s, 1H), 6.69 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.05-7.55 (m, 9H), 7.63 (s, 1H), 7.71 (dd; 2,8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{34}H_{39}BrN_4O_5$ 662, 664; found 663 (2%); 665 (3%).

20 Step E: 3'-Bromo-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the
25 intermediate obtained in Step D by the procedure described in Example 69, Step F. 1H NMR (200MHz, CD_3OD): 1.35 (s, 3H), 1.37 (s, 3H), 2.10-3.00 (m, 6H), 4.48 (dd; 8,12Hz; 1H), 4.93 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.33 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 7.15-7.60 (m, 10H), 7.67 (d, 2Hz, 1H).
30 FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{31}BrN_4O_3$ 562, 564; found 563 (38%); 565 (37%).

-288-

Example 124

3'-Bromo-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)
amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
5 2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-
carboxamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from
3'-bromo-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxo-butyl)-
amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]m
10 ethyl][1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide, trifluoro-
acetate (Example 123) and D-glyceraldehyde acetonide
by the procedure described in Example 71. ¹H NMR
(200MHz, CD₃OD): 1.36 (s, 6H), 2.1-3.0 (m, 6H), 3.17
(dd; 4, 12Hz; 1H), 3.50 (m, 2H), 3.83 (m, 1H), 4.46
15 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.82 (d, 16Hz, 1H), 5.40 (d, 16Hz, 1H),
7.10-7.60 (m, 10H), 7.70 (s, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated
for C₃₂H₃₇BrN₄O₅ 636, 638; found 637 (35%); 639
(35%).

20

Example 125

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
carbomethoxy-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-ben-
zazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

25

Step A: 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carbomethoxy-[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-
30 butanamide

30

Prepared from 3-benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-
methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-
yl]-butanamide (Example 51, Step A) and methyl 4'-

-289-

bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-carboxylate (prepared by the method of D. J. Carini, et al, EP0 publication 324,377) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CDCl_3): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.75 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.6 (m, 5H), 3.52 (s, 3H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.80 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 5.34 (d, 14Hz, 1H), 5.65 (s, 1H), 6.72 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 15H), 7.48 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.78 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{38}\text{H}_{39}\text{N}_3\text{O}_6$ 633; found 634 (M+H, 60%).

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-carbomethoxy-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 1, Step L. ^1H NMR (300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 3H), 2.17 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 3.56 (s, 3H), 4.46 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 4.98 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.37 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.22 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.25-7.50 (m, 8H), 7.59 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.78 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{33}\text{N}_3\text{O}_4$ 499; found 500 (M+H, 100%).

Example 126

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

-290-

Step A: 3-Benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

5 Prepared from 3-benzoyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide (Example 51, Step A) and 4'-bromomethyl-1,1'-biphenyl-2-nitrile (Example 69, Step C) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{37}H_{36}N_4O_4$ 600; found 601 (M+H, 100%).

10

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-cyano-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

15

The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 1, Step L. 1H NMR

(300MHz, CD_3OD): 1.40 (s, 3H), 1.43 (s, 3H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 4.47 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 5.11 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.28 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 20 7.30 (m, 2H), 7.35-7.65 (m, 8H), 7.76 (dt; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.86 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for $C_{29}H_{30}N_4O_2$ 466; found 467 (M+H, 100%).

25

Example 127

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-trifluoromethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

30

Step A: 2-Trifluoromethyl-4'-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl

A solution of 388mg (1.52mmol, 1.4eq.) of 4-methylphenyltrimethylstannane (Example 69, Step A)

-291-

in 5mL of toluene under a nitrogen atmosphere was treated with 238mg of 2-bromobenzotrifluoride (1.06mmol) and 64mg of tetrakis(triphenylphosphine) palladium(0) and the resulting solution heated at
5 reflux for 14 hours. The mixture was cooled, filtered and concentrated under vacuum to give an amber oil that was chromatographed on silica, eluting with hexane, to give the product. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 2.41 (s, 3H), 7.2-7.8 (m, 8H). EI-MS: calculated for
10 C₁₄H₁₁F₃ 236; found 236 (M⁺, 100%).

Step B: 4'-Bromomethyl-2-trifluoromethyl-1,1'-biphenyl

Prepared from 2-trifluoromethyl-4'-methyl-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example
15 69, Step C. EI-MS: calculated for C₁₄H₁₀BrF₃ 314, 316; found 314 (5%), 316 (5%).

Step C: 3-Benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-trifluoromethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from 3-benzyloxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide (Example 51, Step A) and 4'-bromo-
25 methyl-2-trifluoromethyl-1,1'-biphenyl by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (300MHz, CDCl₃): 1.37 (s, 3H), 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.73 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.6 (m, 5H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 4.82 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.06 (s, 2H), 5.29 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.65 (s, 1H), 6.70
30 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 7.1-7.4 (m, 14H), 7.44 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.52 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.71 (d, 8Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₃₇H₃₆F₃N₃O₄ 643; found 644 (M+H, 55%).

-292-

Step D: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-trifluoromethyl-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

- 5 The intermediate obtained in Step C (92mg, 0.14mmol) was treated with 1.62mL of 30% hydrogen bromide in acetic acid at room temperature for 2 hours. The mixture was concentrated under vacuum to give a dark yellow residue. Purification by
10 preparative reverse phase high pressure liquid chromatography on C18, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (linear gradient: 75% methanol increased to 85% over 10 minutes) afforded 71mg (0.11mmol, 81%) of the title compound as a
15 colorless glass.
 ¹H NMR (300MHz, CD₃OD): 1.39 (s, 3H), 1.44 (s, 3H), 2.16 (m, 1H), 2.38 (m, 1H), 2.5-2.7 (m, 4H), 4.47 (dd; 8, 12Hz; 1H), 5.04 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.34 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.20-7.45 (m, 9H), 7.56 (t, 8Hz, 1H), 7.66 (t, 8Hz, 1H),
20 7.79 (d, 8Hz, 1H). FAB-MS: calculated for C₂₉H₃₁F₃N₃O₂ 509; found 510 (M+H, 100%).

Example 128

- 25 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

Step A: 6-Methylthio-1-tetralone oxime

- 30 Prepared from 6-methylthio-1-tetralone (prepared by the method described in EPO 0 325,963 A1) by the procedure described in Example 113, Step A. ¹H

-293-

NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.89 (m, 2H), 2.52 (s, 3H), 2.78 (m, 4H), 7.02 (d, 2Hz, 1H), 7.08 (dd; 2, 8Hz; 1H), 7.81 (d, 8Hz, 1H).

5 Step B: 7-Methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 6-methylthio-1-tetralone oxime by the procedure described in Example 113, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.23 (m, 2H), 2.36 (m, 2H), 2.49 (s, 3H), 2.78 (t, 8Hz, 2H), 6.94 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.14 (m, 2H), 7.75 (br s, 1H).

15 Step C: 3-Iodo-7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

Prepared from 7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one by the procedure described in Example 31, Step B. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 2.51 (s, 3H), 2.6-2.9 (m, 3H), 2.50 (s, 3H), 2.97 (m, 1H), 4.68 (t, 9Hz, 1H), 6.95 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.15 (m, 2H), 7.5 (br s, 1H).

20 Step D: 3-Amino-7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one

A mixture of 0.5g of 3-iodo-7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-1-benzazepin-2-one and 15g of ammonia in 20mL of chloroform was shaken in a bomb at 100°C for 3 hours. The bomb was cooled, vented and the contents transferred to a separatory funnel. The mixture was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvents removed under vacuum to give the product.

-294-

¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.90 (m, 1H), 2.3-2.7 (m, 2H), 2.45 (s, 3H), 2.85 (m, 1H), 3.39 (dd; 8, 11Hz; 1H), 6.89 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.10 (m, 2H), 8.3 (br s, 1H).

5

Step E: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step D and 3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-butanolic acid (Example 31, Step E) by the procedure described in Example 1, Step F. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.33 (s, 6H), 1.40 (s, 9H), 1.91 (m, 1H), 2.4-3.0 (m, 5H), 2.48 (s, 3H), 4.50 (m, 1H), 5.22 (br s, 1H), 6.68 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.90 (d, 8Hz, 1H), 7.11 (m, 2H), 7.66 (br s, 1H).

10
15

Step F: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

20

Prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step E by the procedure described in Example 1, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz, CDCl₃): 1.37 (s, 6H), 1.43 (s, 9H), 1.78 (m, 1H), 2.2-2.7 (m, 5H), 2.44 (s, 3H), 4.49 (m, 1H), 4.69 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.12 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.34 (br s, 1H), 6.69 (d, 7Hz, 1H), 6.9-7.1 (m, 12H), 7.2-7.5 (m, 13H), 7.87 (m, 1H).

25

30

-295-

Step G: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

5 The title compound was prepared from the intermediate obtained in Step F by the procedure described in Example 34, Step K. ¹H NMR (200MHz,DMSO-d₆): 1.24 (s,3H), 1.25 (s,3H), 2.0-2.6 (m,6H), 2.47 (s,3H), 4.25 (m,1H), 4.78 (d,15Hz,1H),
10 5.15 (d,15Hz,1H), 6.97 (d,8Hz,2H), 7.05-7.30 (m,5H), 7.45-7.70 (m,4H), 7.92 (br s,2H), 8.68 (d,7Hz,1H).

Example 129

15 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

20 Step A: 3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(N-triphenylmethyl)-tetrazol-5-yl][1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide

25 Prepared as a mixture of two racemic diastereomers from the intermediate obtained in Example 128, Step F by the procedure described in Example 48, Step A. ¹H NMR (200MHz,CDC1₃): 1.37 (s,6H), 1.44 (s,9H), 1.90 (m,1H), 2.4-2.9 (m,5H), 2.78 (s,3H), 4.54 (m,1H), 4.76 (two doublets,15Hz,total of
30 1H), 5.18 (two doublets,15Hz,total of 1H), 5.32 (br s,1H), 6.9-7.1 (m,9H), 7.2-7.6 (m,15H), 7.90 (m,1H), 7.98 (d,8Hz,1H), 8.08 (br s,1H).

-296-

Step B: 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3-yl]-butanamide, hydrochloride

5 The title compound was prepared as a mixture of two racemic diastereomers from the intermediate obtained in Step A by the procedure described in Example 34, Step K.

10 ¹H NMR (200MHz, DMSO-d₆): 1.24 (s, 3H), 1.26 (s, 3H), 2.0-2.8 (m, 6H), 2.78 (s, 3H), 4.25 (m, 1H), 4.94 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.19 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 7.01 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.16 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.5-7.7 (m, 7H), 7.95 (br s, 2H), 8.75 (d, 7Hz, 1H).

15

Example 130

20 3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

Step A: 3-Methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]but-2-eneamide

25 To a suspension of 1.18g (2.64mmol) of 3(R)-amino-1,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-2H-1-benzazepin-2-one, hydrochloride (Example 4, Step C) in 30mL of methylene chloride under nitrogen at -15°C was added 0.923mL (2.64mmol) of triethylamine followed by 0.294mL (2.64mmol) of 3,3-dimethylacryloyl chloride. The reaction mixture was stirred at -15°C for 2 hours then

30

-297-

quenched by the addition of 1N hydrochloric acid. The mixture was diluted with 50mL of methylene chloride and washed with 50mL of 1N hydrochloric acid and brine. The organic layer was removed and concentrated to dryness under vacuum. The residue was redissolved in 30mL of methanol and treated with 1.5mL of 9N hydrochloric acid. After stirring for 30 minutes, the mixture was concentrated to dryness under vacuum to give 1.3g (2.63mmol, 99%) of the product as a white solid.

¹H NMR (400MHz, CD₃OD): 1.85 (s, 3H), 2.06 (s, 3H), 2.08 (m, 1H), 2.29 (m, 1H), 2.44 (m, 1H), 2.55 (m, 1H), 4.40 (dd; 7, 11Hz; 1H), 4.85 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.26 (d, 15Hz, 1H), 5.77 (s, 1H), 7.00 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.18 (d, 8Hz, 2H), 7.2-7.4 (m, 4H), 7.54 (m, 2H), 7.64 (m, 2H).

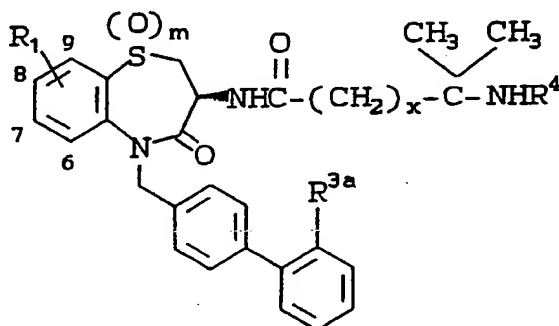
Step B: 3-[(2(R)-Hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-N-[2, 3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide, trifluoroacetate

The intermediate obtained in Step A (18mg, 0.037mmol) was dissolved in 2mL of (R)-(-)-1-amino-2-propanol and the resulting solution heated under nitrogen at 120°C for 5 hours. The reaction mixture was cooled, concentrated under vacuum at 50°C and the residue purified by medium pressure liquid chromatography on C8, eluting with methanol/0.1% aqueous trifluoroacetic acid (50:50), to give 14mg (0.021mmol, 57%) of the title compound as a colorless glass. The material thus obtained was identical by 400MHz NMR (CD₃OD), FAB-MS and reverse phase analytical high pressure liquid chromatography to the material obtained in Example 102.

-298-

Example A

Utilizing the general procedures described
in Example 1 to 130, the following compounds of
Formula I can be prepared from the appropriately
substituted starting materials and reagents.



R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
H			1	0
H			1	0
H			1	0
H		H	0	0
H			1	1

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-299-

Example A (Cont'd)

5

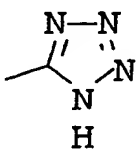
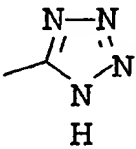
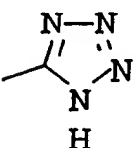
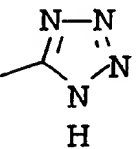
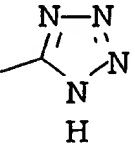
10

15

20

25

30

R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	1
H		$\begin{array}{c} -\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	1	1
H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OCH}_3 \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
8-F		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
8-CF ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0

-300-

Example A (Cont'd)

5

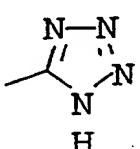
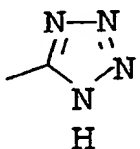
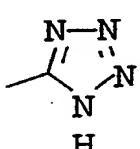
10

15

20

25

30

R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
9-F		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
8-OCH ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
8-SCH ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
H	-CO ₂ NH ₂	H	1	0
H	-CO ₂ NH ₂	H	1	1
H	-CO ₂ NH ₂	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0

-301-

Example A (Cont'd)

5

10

15

20

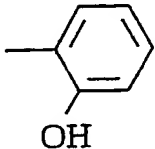
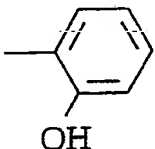
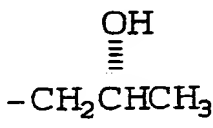
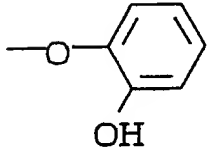
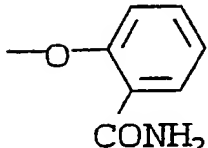
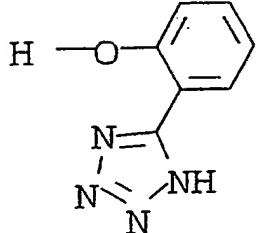
25

30

R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
H	$-\text{CO}_2\text{NH}_2$	$-\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{OH}}{\underset{\equiv}{\text{C}}}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	1	0
H	$-\text{CO}_2\text{NHEt}$	H	1	0
H	$-\text{CO}_2\text{NHEt}$	$-\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{OH}}{\underset{\equiv}{\text{C}}}\text{CH}_3$	1	0
H	$-\text{CO}_2\text{NHEt}$	$-\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{OH}}{\underset{\equiv}{\text{C}}}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	1	0
H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CONH}_2$	$-\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{OH}}{\underset{\equiv}{\text{C}}}\text{CH}_3$	1	0
H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{CONHEt}$	$-\text{CH}_2\overset{\text{OH}}{\underset{\equiv}{\text{C}}}\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	1	0

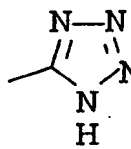
-302-

Example A (Cont'd)

	R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
5					
	H		H	1	0
10					
	H			1	0
15					
	H		H	1	0
20					
	H		H	1	0
25					
	H		H	1	0
30					

-303-

Example A (Cont'd)

	R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
5					
	H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$	1	0
10	H	$-\text{CONH}_2$	H	0	0
	H	$-\text{CONHEt}$	H	0	0
15	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	H	1	0
20	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	1
25	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$	1	0
	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
30	H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOCH}_3$	H	1	0

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-304-

Example A (Cont'd)

5

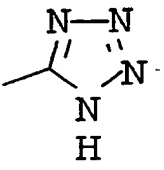
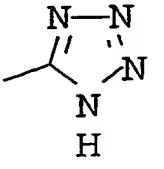
10

15

20

25

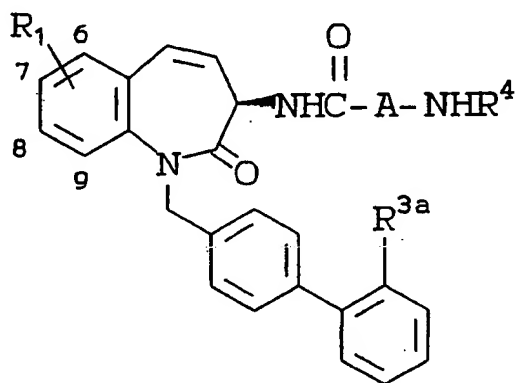
30

R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	x	m
H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOPh}$	H	1	0
H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOCH}_3$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0
H	$-\text{CH}_2\text{NHCOCH}_3$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$	1	0
H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$	1	0
H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}(\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$	1	1
H	$-\text{CONHOH}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	1	0

-305-

Example B

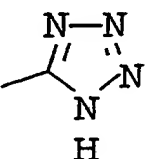
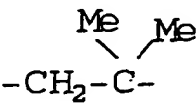
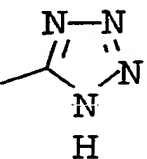
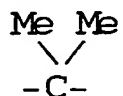
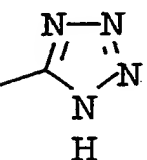
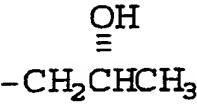
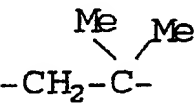
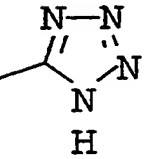
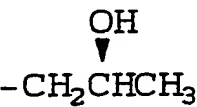
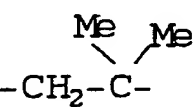
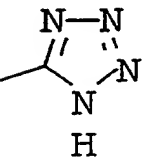
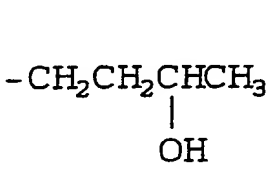
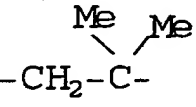
Utilizing the general procedures described
in Example 1 to 130, the following compounds of
Formula I can be prepared from the appropriately
substituted starting materials and reagents.



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

- 305/1 -

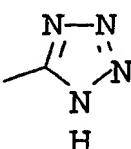
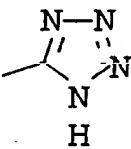
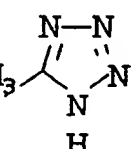
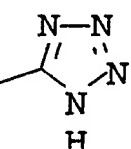
Example B (Cont'd)

	R_1	R^{3a}	R^4	A
5	H		H	
10	H		H	
15	H			
20	H			
25	H			
30				

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-306-

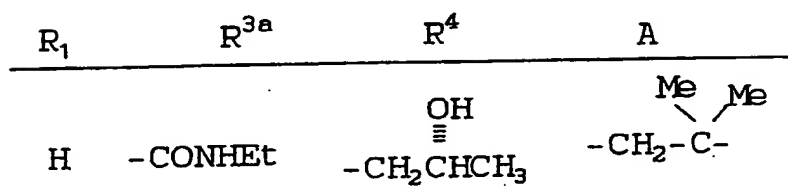
Example B (Cont'd)

	R ₁	R ^{3a}	R ⁴	A
5				
	7-F		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
10				
	7-SCH ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
15				
	7-S(O)CH ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
20				
	7-OCH ₃		$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
25				
	H	-CONH ₂	H	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
	H	-CONH ₂	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$
30				
	H	-CONHMe	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2-\text{C}- \end{array}$

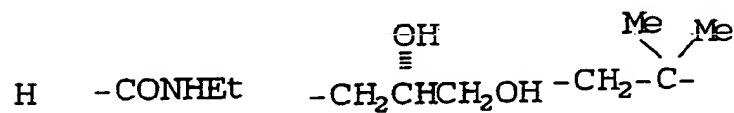
-307-

Example B (Cont'd)

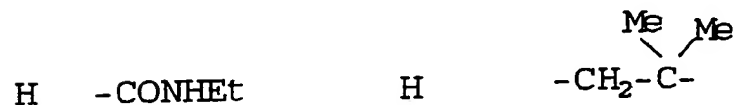
5



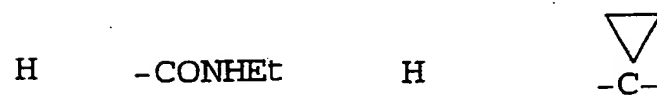
10



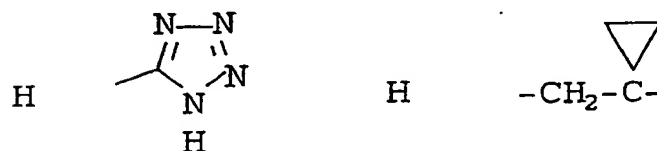
15



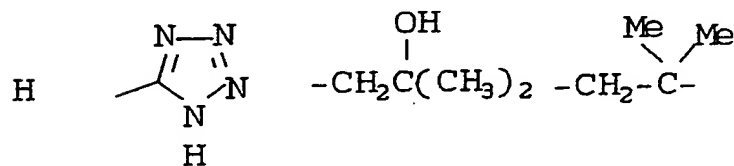
20



25



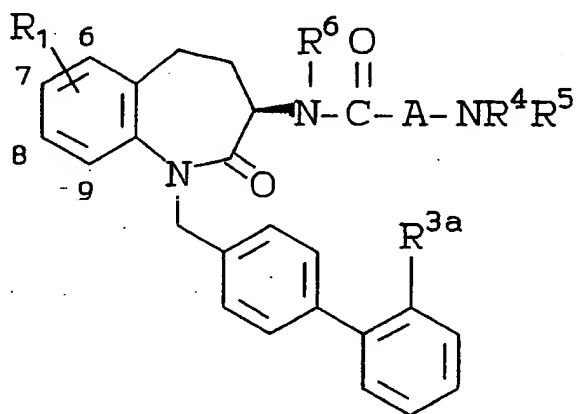
30



-308-

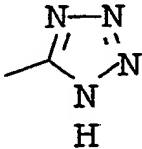
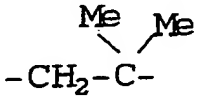
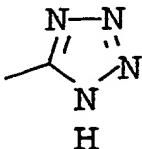
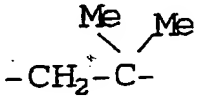
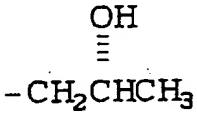
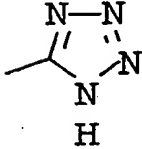
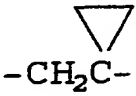
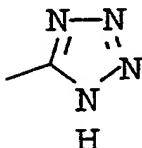

Example C

Utilizing the general procedures described
in Example 1 to 130, the following compounds of
Formula I can be prepared from the appropriately
substituted starting materials and reagents.



- 308/1 -

Example C (Cont'd)

5	R_1	R^{3a}	A	R^4	R^5	R^6
10	7-F			H	H	CH ₃
15	H				H	CH ₃
20	H			H	H	H
25	H			H	H	H

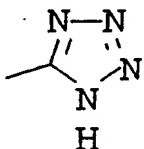

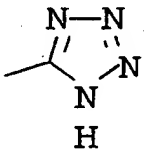
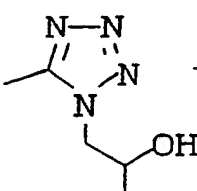
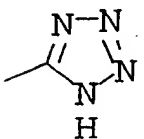
30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-309-

Example C (Cont'd)

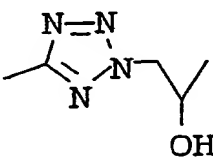
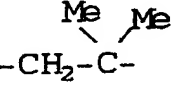
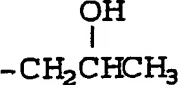
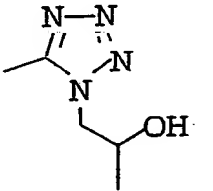
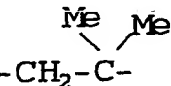
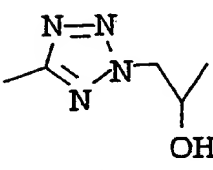
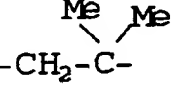
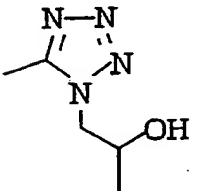
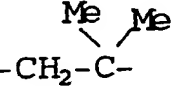
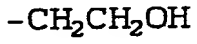
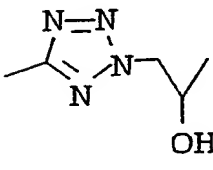
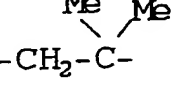
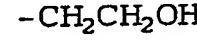
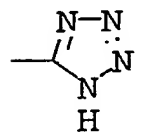
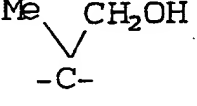
5

	R_1	R^{3a}	A	R^4	R^5	R^6
10	H			H	H	H
15	H		$(CH_2)_4NH_2$ -CH-	H	H	H
20	H		$\begin{matrix} Me & Me \\ & \diagdown & / \\ -CH_2-C- \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} OH \\ \\ -CH_2CHCH_3 \end{matrix}$	H	H
25	H	-C \equiv N	$\begin{matrix} Me & Me \\ & \diagdown & / \\ -CH_2-C- \end{matrix}$	$\begin{matrix} OH \\ \equiv \\ -CH_2CHCH_3 \end{matrix}$	H	H
	H	-CF ₃	$\begin{matrix} Me & Me \\ & \diagdown & / \\ -CH_2-C- \end{matrix}$	H	H	H
30	H		$\begin{matrix} Me & CH_2OH \\ & \diagdown & / \\ -CH_2-C- \end{matrix}$	H	H	H

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-310-

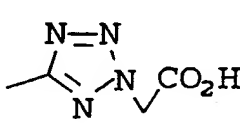
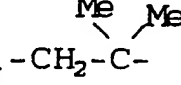
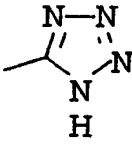
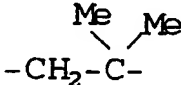
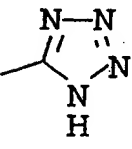
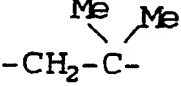
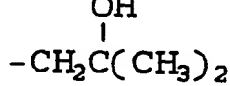
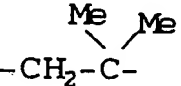
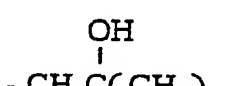
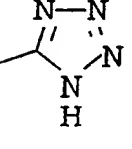
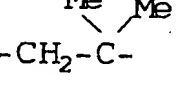
Example C (Cont'd)

	R ₁	R ^{3a}	A	R ⁴	R ⁵	R ⁶
5						
	H				H	H
10						
	7-F			H	H	H
15						
	7-F			H	H	H
20						
	H				H	H
25						
	H				H	H
30						
	H			H	H	H

-311-

Example C (Cont'd)

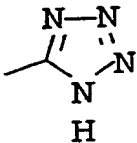
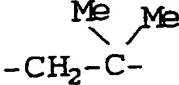
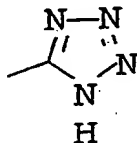
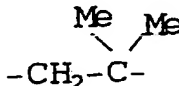
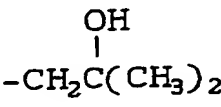
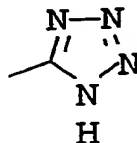
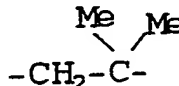
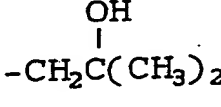
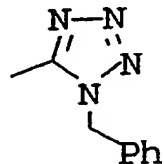
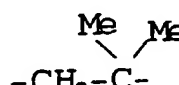
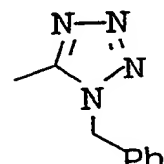
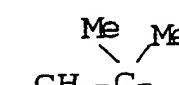
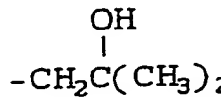
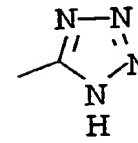
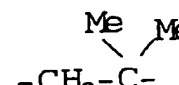
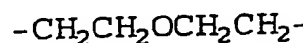
5

	R_1	R^{3a}	A	R^4	R^5	R^6
10	H			H	H	H
15	H			H	CH ₃	H
20	H				H	H
25	H	-CONH ₂			H	H
30	7-OCH ₃			H	H	H

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

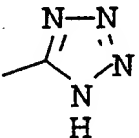
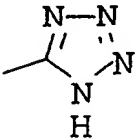
-312-

Example C (Cont'd)

	R_1	R^{3a}	A	R^4	R^5	R^6
5						
	7-OH			H	H	H
10						
	7-OCH ₃				H	H
15						
	7-OH				H	H
20						
	H			H	H	H
25						
	H				H	H
30						
	H					H

-313-

Example C (Cont'd)

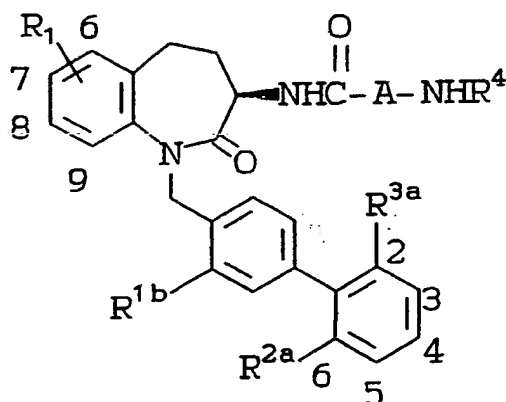
	R ₁	R ^{3a}	A	R ⁴	R ⁵	R ⁶
5						
	H	-CONHCH ₃	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	H	H
10	H	-CONH Et	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	H	H
15	H	-CONHOH	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	H	H
20	H	-CONHOH	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	H	H
	H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} -\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	H	H
25	H		$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} -\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \\ \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$	H	H
30	H	-CONHOH	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	H	H
	7-F	-CONHOH	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Me} \quad \text{Me} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	H	H

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-314-

EXAMPLE D

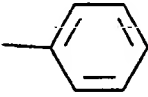
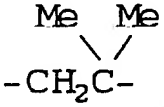
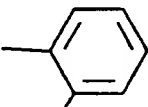
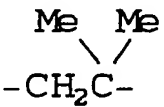
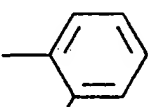
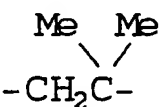
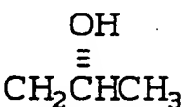
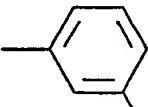
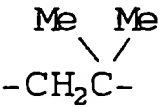
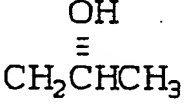
Utilizing the general procedures described in
Example 1 to 130, the following compounds of Formula
I can be prepared from the appropriately substituted
starting materials and reagents.



- 314/1 -

Example D (Cont'd)

5

10	R_1	R^{1b}	R^{2a}	R^{3a}	A	R^4
	H	H		H		H
15	H	H		H		H
20	H	H		H		
25	H	H		H		

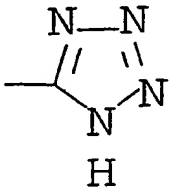
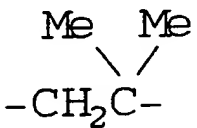
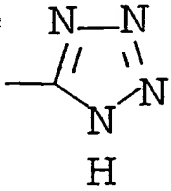
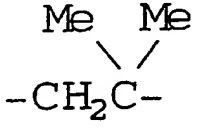
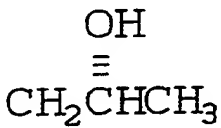
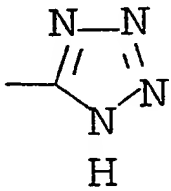
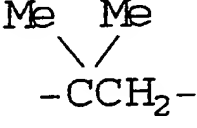
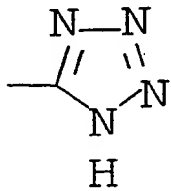
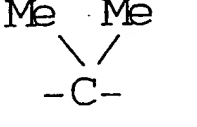
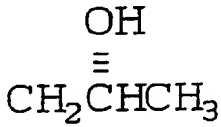
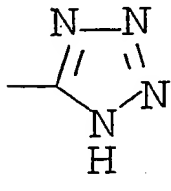
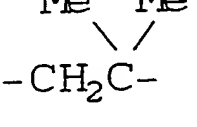
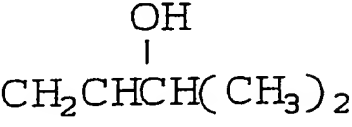
30

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-315-

EXAMPLE D (Cont'd)

5

	R_1	R^{1b}	R^{2a}	R^{3a}	A	R^4
10	H	Br	H			H
15	H	Br	H			
20	H	H	H			H
25	H	H	H			
30	H	H	H			

-316-

EXAMPLE D (Cont'd)

5

10

15

20

25

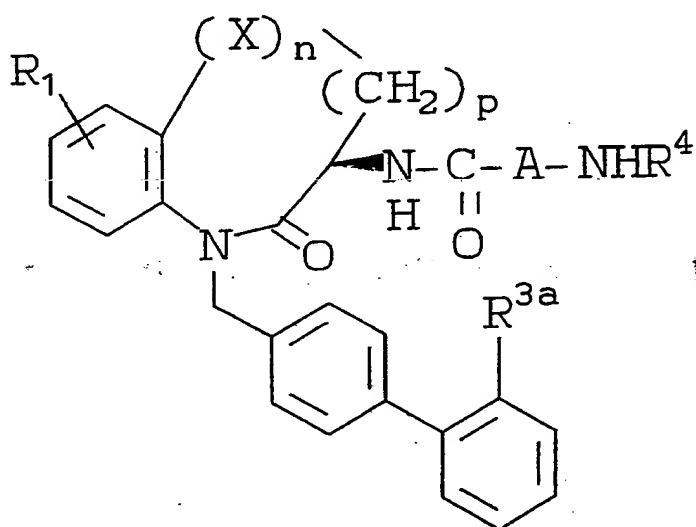
30

R_1	R^{1b}	R^{2a}	R^{3a}	A	R^4
H	H	H			
H	H	H			
H	H	H			
H	Br	H	-CONH ₂		H

-317-

EXAMPLE E

Utilizing the general procedures described
in Example 1 to 130, the following compounds of
Formula I can be prepared from the appropriately
substituted starting materials and reagents.



-318-

EXAMPLE E (Cont'd)

5

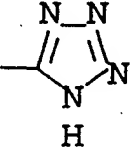
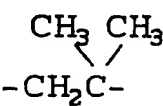
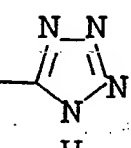
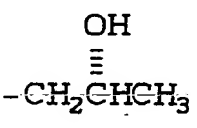
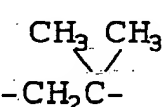
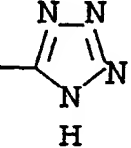
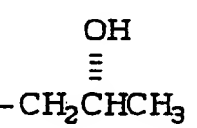
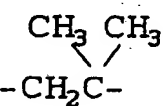
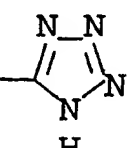
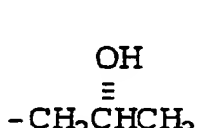
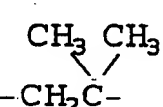
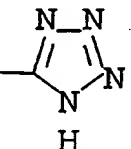
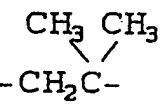
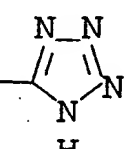
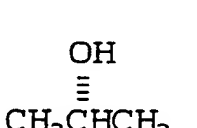
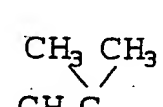
10

15

20

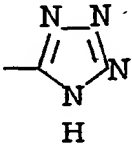
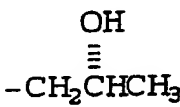
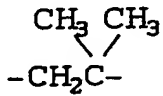
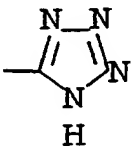
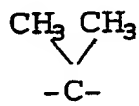
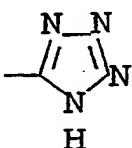
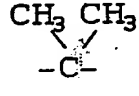
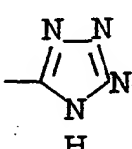
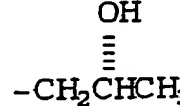
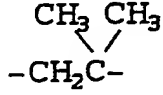
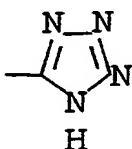
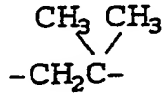
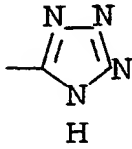
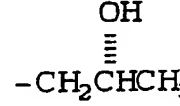
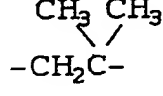
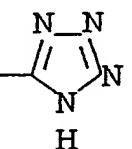
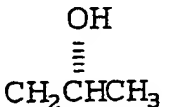
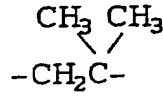
25

30

X	n	p	R ^{3a}	R ⁴	A
-	0	3		H	
-	0	3			
-	0	1			
-	0	0			
S	1	0		H	
S	1	0			

-319-

EXAMPLE E (Cont'd)

	X	n	p	R ^{3a}	R ⁴	A
5	SO	1	0			
10	S	1	0		H	
15	SO	1	0		H	
20	O	1	1			
	O	1	1		H	
25	C=O	1	1			
30	CHOH	1	1			

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-320-

EXAMPLE E (Cont'd)

5

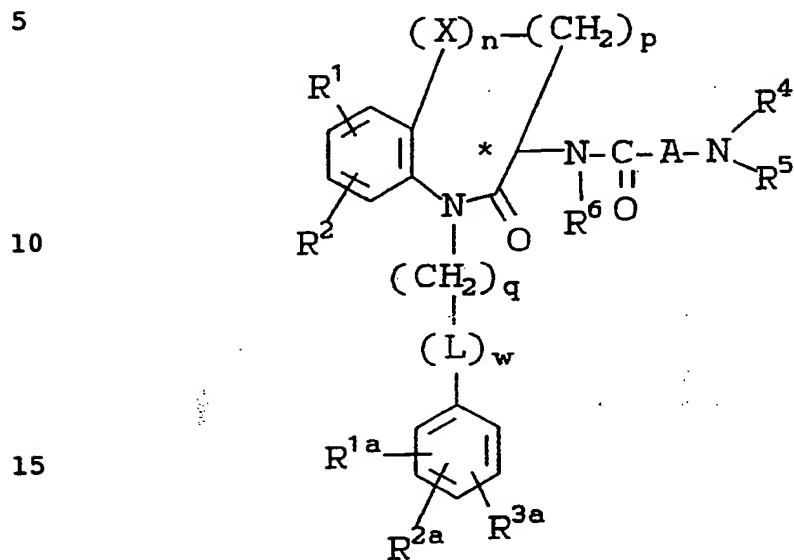
	X	n	p	R ^{3a}	R ⁴	A
10	S	1	0	-CONH ₂	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
15	S	1	0	-CONHEt	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
	S	1	0	-CONHEt	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
20	SO	1	0	-CONHEt	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
25	S	1	0	-CONHOH	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
	O	1	1	-CONHEt	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \equiv \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{CHCH}_3 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \quad \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ -\text{CH}_2\text{C}- \end{array}$
30						

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

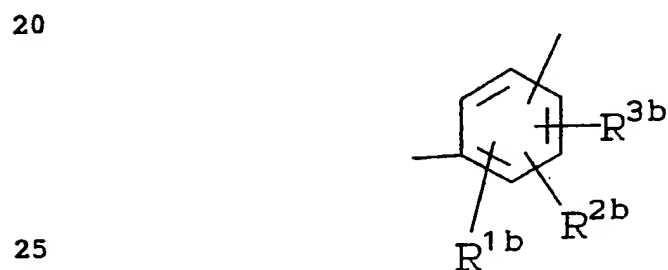
-321-

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound having the formula:



where L is



n is 0 or 1;

p is 0 to 3;

q is 0 to 4;

w is 0 or 1;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-322-

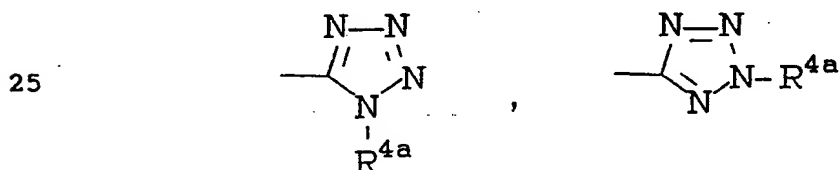
X is C=O, O, S(O)_m, $\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ | \\ -\text{CH}- \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \text{R}^{10} \\ | \\ -\text{N}- \end{array}$, -CH=CH-;

m is 0 to 2;

5 R¹, R², R^{1a}, R^{2a}, R^{1b}, and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C₁-C₇ alkyl, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkoxy, -S(O)_mR^{7a}, cyano, nitro, R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-, phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or hydroxy;

10 R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₃ perfluoroalkyl, C₁-C₆ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, where the substituents are phenyl or substituted phenyl; phenyl or substituted phenyl where the phenyl substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, or hydroxy and v is 0 to 3; R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R⁹, C₁-C₆ alkyl substituted with R⁹, phenyl substituted with R⁹ or phenoxy substituted with R⁹;

20 R⁹ is



30 R^{7b}O(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}COO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}OCO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}O(CH₂)_vCO-, R⁴R⁵N(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NCO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NCS(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NN(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-, R⁴R⁵NN(R⁵)CS(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)N(R⁵)CO(CH₂)_v-, R^{7b}CON(R⁴)N(R⁵)CS(CH₂)_v-, R⁴N(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v- or R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH₂)_v-;

and v is as defined above;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

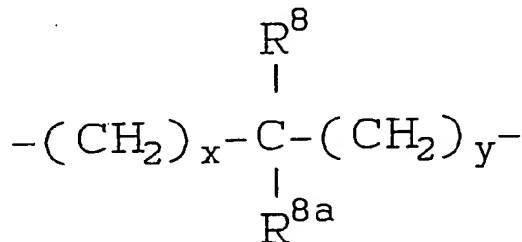
-323-

R^4 , R^{4a} , R^5 are independently hydrogen, phenyl,
 substituted phenyl, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10}
 alkyl, C_3 - C_{10} alkenyl, substituted C_3 - C_{10} alkenyl,
 C_3 - C_{10} alkynyl, or substituted C_3 - C_{10} alkynyl where
 5 the substituents on the phenyl, alkyl, alkenyl or
 alkynyl are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy,
 C_3 - C_7 cycloalkyl, phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, fluoro, R^1
 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted
 phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2
 10 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the
 substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,
 C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxy, carboxy,
 formyl, or $-NR^{10}R^{11}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are
 independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, phenyl, phenyl
 15 C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_1 - C_5 -alkoxy, carbonyl or
 C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyl- C_1 - C_6 alkyl; or
 R^4 and R^5 can be taken together to form
 $-(CH_2)_rB(CH_2)_s-$ where B is CH_2 , O or $S(O)_m$ or $N-R^{10}$,
 r and s are independently 1 to 3, and R^{10} is as
 20 defined above;

R^6 is hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, phenyl or phenyl C_1 - C_{10}
 alkyl;

A is

25



30

-324-

where x and y are independently 0-3;

R^8 and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, trifluoromethyl, phenyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro, $S(O)_m R^{7a}$, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, C_3 - C_7 cycloalkyl, phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl C_1 - C_3 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl,

C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy, formyl, or $-NR^{10}R^{11}$ where R^{10} and R^{11} are as defined above; or

R^8 and R^{8a} can be taken together to form $-(CH_2)_t-$ where t is 2 to 6; and R^8 and R^{8a} can independently be joined to one or both of R^4 and R^5 to form alkyl bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. A compound of Claim 1 wherein:

n is 0 or 1;

p is 0 to 3;

q is 0 to 2;

w is 0 or 1;

R^{10}

|

X is 0, $S(O)_m$, -N-, -CH=CH-;

m is 0 to 2;

R^1 , R^2 , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{1b} , and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C_1 - C_7 alkyl, C_1 - C_3 perfluoroalkyl,

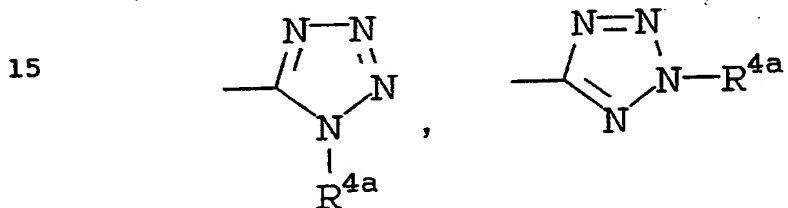
-325-

$-S(O)_m R^{7a}$, $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$,
phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents
are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, C_1-C_6
alkoxy, or hydroxy;

5 R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_3
perfluoroalkyl, C_1-C_6 alkyl, substituted C_1-C_6 alkyl,
where the substituents are phenyl; phenyl and v is 0
to 2;

10 R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R^9 , C_1-C_6
alkyl substituted with R^9 , phenyl substituted with R^9
or phenoxy substituted with R^9 ;

R^9 is



20 $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^{7b}CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5N(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CON(R^4)(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5NCS(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5NN(R^5)CO(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^{7b}CON(R^4)N(R^5)CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4N(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$ or
 $R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$; where v is as defined above;
25 R^4 , R^{4a} , R^5 are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_{10} alkyl,
substituted C_1-C_{10} alkyl, where the substituents on
the alkyl are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C_1-C_6 alkoxy,
 C_3-C_7 cycloalkyl, phenyl C_1-C_3 alkoxy, fluoro, R^1
substituted or R^1 , R^2 independently disubstituted
30 phenyl C_1-C_3 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2
independently disubstituted phenyl, where the
substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-326-

C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy or formyl;

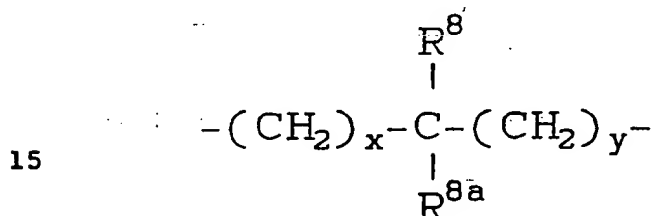
R⁴ and R⁵ can be taken together to form

-(CH₂)_rB(CH₂)_s- where B is CH₂, O or S(O)_m or N-R¹⁰

5 r and s are independently 1 to 3 and R¹⁰ is as defined above;

R⁶ is hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl or phenyl C₁-C₁₀ alkyl;

10 A is



where x and y are independently 0-2;

20 R⁸ and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₁₀ alkyl, substituted C₁-C₁₀ alkyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro, S(O)_mR^{7a}, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, phenyl, R¹ substituted or R¹, R² independently disubstituted phenyl,

25 C₁-C₅-alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₅ alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy, formyl, -NR¹⁰R¹¹ where R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, or C₁-C₅ alkanoyl-C₁-C₆ alkyl; or R⁸ and R^{8a} can be taken together to form -(CH₂)_t- where t is 2 to 4; and R⁸ and R^{8a} can independently be joined to one or both of R⁴ and R⁵ to form alkyl
30 bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-327-

bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

3. A compound of Claim 2 wherein:

5

n is 0 or 1;

p is 0 to 2;

q is 0 to 2;

w is 0 or 1;

10

X is $S(O)_m$, $-CH=CH-$;

m is 0 or 1;

R^1 , R^2 , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{1b} , and R^{2b} are independently hydrogen, halogen, C_1 - C_7 alkyl, C_1 - C_3 perfluoroalkyl, $-S(O)_m R^{7a}$, $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v$,

15

phenyl or substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1 to 3 of halogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, or hydroxy;

R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, substituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl, where the substituents are

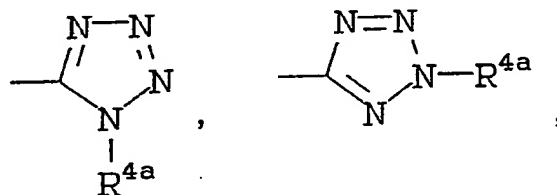
20

phenyl and v is 0 to 2;

R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen, R^9 , C_1 - C_6 alkyl substituted with R^9 , phenyl substituted with R^9 or phenoxy substituted with R^9 ;

25

R^9 is



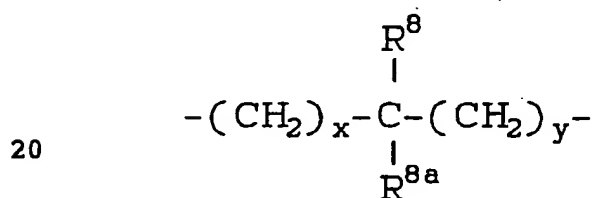
30

-328-

$R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^{7b}CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5N(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CON(R^4)(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5NCS(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4N(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$ or
 $R^{7a}CON(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$; where v is as defined above;
 5 R^4 , R^{4a} , R^5 are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, where the substituents on
 the alkyl, are from 1 to 5 of hydroxy, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy,
 fluoro, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2
 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the
 10 substituents on the phenyl are as defined above,
 C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy;

R^6 is hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl;

15 A is



where x and y are independently 0-2;
 R^8 and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl,
 25 substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl where the substituents are
 from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro,
 $S(O)_mR^{7a}$, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 ,
 R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl,
 C_1 - C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1 - C_5 alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy; or
 30 R^8 and R^{8a} can be taken together to form $-(CH_2)_t-$
 where t is 2; and R^8 and R^{8a} can

-329-

independently be joined to one or both of R^4 and R^5
 to form alkyl bridges between the terminal nitrogen
 and the alkyl portion of the A group wherein the
 bridge contains from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;
 5 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

4. A compound of Claim 3 wherein:

n is 0 or 1;

10 p is 0 to 2;

q is 1;

w is 1;

X is $S(O)_m$ or $-CH=CH-$;

m is 0 or 1;

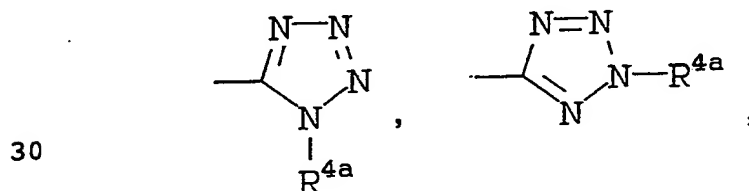
15 R^1 , R^2 , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{1b} , and R^{2b} are independently
 hydrogen, halogen, C_1 - C_7 alkyl, C_1 - C_3 perfluoroalkyl,
 $-S(O)_m R^{7a}$, $R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, phenyl or
 substituted phenyl where the substituents are from 1
 to 3 of halogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, or
 20 hydroxy;

R^{7a} and R^{7b} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_6 alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_6 alkyl, where the substituents are
 phenyl, phenyl and v is 0 to 1;

R^{3a} and R^{3b} are independently hydrogen or R^9 ;

25

R^9 is



-330-

$R^{7b}O(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}COO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}OCO(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^{7b}CO(CH_2)_v-$, $R^4R^5N(CH_2)_v-$, $R^{7b}CON(R^4)(CH_2)_v-$,
 $R^4R^5NCO(CH_2)_v-$ or $R^4N(OR^{7b})CO(CH_2)_v-$; where v is as
 defined above;

5 R^4 , R^5 are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, where the substituents on
 the alkyl are from 1 to 3 of hydroxy, C_1 - C_3 alkoxy,
 fluoro, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 , R^2
 10 independently disubstituted phenyl, where the
 substituents on the phenyl are as defined above;

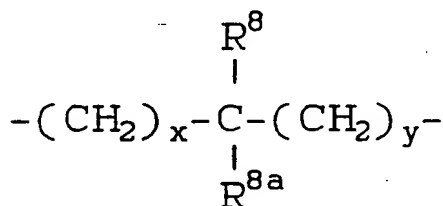
R^{4a} is hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl, substituted C_1 - C_{10}
 alkyl where the substituents on the alkyl are from 1
 to 3 of hydroxy.

15

R^6 is hydrogen;

A is

20



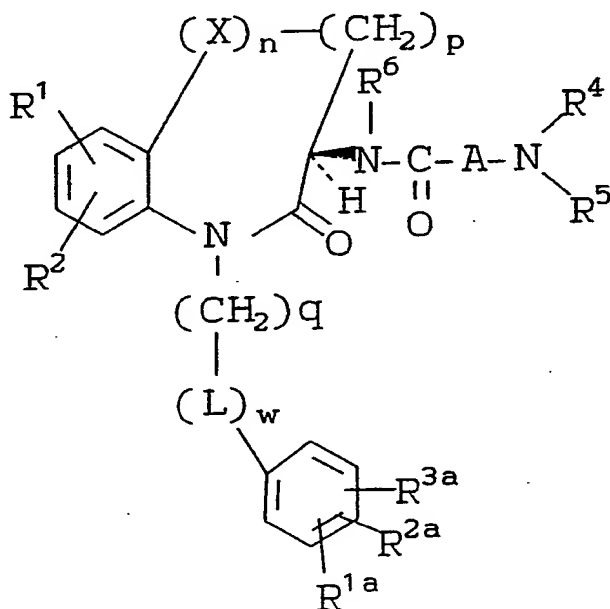
25

where x and y are independently 0-1;
 R^8 and R^{8a} are independently hydrogen, C_1 - C_{10} alkyl,
 substituted C_1 - C_{10} alkyl where the substituents are
 from 1 to 3 of imidazolyl, indolyl, hydroxy, fluoro,
 30 $S(O)_mR^{7a}$, C_1 - C_6 alkoxy, phenyl, R^1 substituted or R^1 ,
 R^2 independently disubstituted phenyl,

-331-

C_1-C_5 -alkanoyloxy, C_1-C_5 alkoxy carbonyl, carboxy; or
 R^8 and R^{8a} can be taken together to form $-(CH_2)_t-$
 where t is 2; and R^8 and R^{8a} can independently be
 joined to one or both of R^4 and R^5 to form alkyl
 bridges between the terminal nitrogen and the alkyl
 portion of the A group wherein the bridge contains
 from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;
 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

5. A stereospecific compound of Claim 1
 having the following structural formula:



where R^1 , R^2 , X , n , p , q , L , w , R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{3a} , R^4 ,
 R^5 , A and R^6 are as defined in Claim 1

-332-

6. A compound of Claim 1 which is:

5 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide;

10 2(R)-amino-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide;

2(R)-amino-3-phenyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-
1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide;

15 2(R)-amino-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide;

20 3-(2-hydroxyethyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-
1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide;

25 3-(2-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide;

30 2-amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-
[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-
methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide;

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-333-

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide;

5 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-trifluoromethyl-2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide;

10 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[6-fluoro-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide;

15 3-benzylamino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-
oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide;
or

20 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-
tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-
benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide;

25 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide

30 3-(2(S)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide

-334-

- 3-(2(R),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,-
4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 5
- 3-(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,-
4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-
[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-
yl]-butanamide
- 10
- 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 15
- 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-
tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-
butanamide
- 20
- 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-hydroxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-
2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-
yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 25
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-hydroxy-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 30
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-fluoro-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-
yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-
3(R)-yl]-butanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-335-

- 2-(3(R)-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide
- 5
- 2-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-propanamide
- 10
- 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 15
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 20
- 3-(3(S)-hydroxybutyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methoxy-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 25
- Quinuclidine-N'-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-3-carboxamide
- 30
- 3-(2-fluoropropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-336-

3-(2-methoxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

5

3-(2-hydroxy-2-methylpropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

10

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

15

4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

20

4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

25

N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

30

N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-337-

N-methyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

5

3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

10

3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-hydroxymethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

15

3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-aminomethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide

20

3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-aminomethyl[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

25

4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3(S),4-trihydroxybutyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

30

4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(3-hydroxybutyl)amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

-338-

- 3-Amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3-dihydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 5 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3-dihydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 10 N-ethyl-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3-dihydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 15 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
- 20 3-(2(S)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide
- 25 N-ethyl-4'-[[3(S)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-5(2H)-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide
- 30 4'-[[3(S)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-3,4-dihydro-4-oxo-1,5-benzothiazepin-5(2H)-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

-339-

4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl)amino]-
2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]-
methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-thioamide

5 N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[(3-amino-3-methyl-1-oxobut-
yl)amino]-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benz-
azepin-1-yl]-methyl]-[1,1'-biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

10 N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(S),3-dihydroxypropyl)-
amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-bi-
phenyl]-2-carboxamide

15 N-hydroxy-4'-[[3(R)-[[3-[(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)-
amino]-3-methyl-1-oxobutyl]amino]-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1H-1-benzazepin-1-yl]methyl]-[1,1'-
biphenyl]-2-carboxamide

20 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-di-
hydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-
biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-
yl]-butanamide

25 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[3,4-dihydro-1,4-dioxo-5-[[2'-
(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-
1,5-benzothiazepin-3(S)-yl]-butanamide

30 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylthio-2,3,4,5-tetra-
hydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-bi-
phenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]buta-
namide

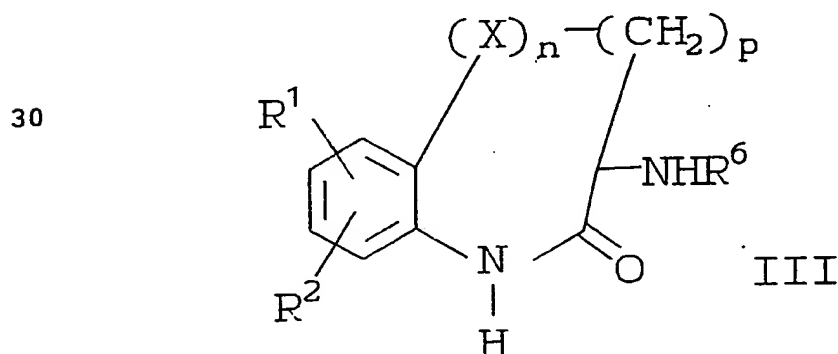
-340-

- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methyl-thio-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 5
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methyl-sulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 10
- 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[7-methylsulfinyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 15
- 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(acetylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 20
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(acetylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 25
- 3-amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(benzoylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 30
- 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(benzoylaminomethyl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide

-341-

- 5 3-amino-3-methyl-4-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]-methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]butanamide
- 2-Amino-2-methyl-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide
- 10 3-(2(R)-hydroxypropyl)amino-3-methyl-4-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]-1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]-butanamide
- 15 2-(3-hydroxybutyl)amino-2-methyl-3-hydroxy-N-[2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-2-oxo-1-[[2'-(1H-tetrazol-5-yl)-[1,1'-biphenyl]-4-yl]methyl]1H-1-benzazepin-3(R)-yl]propanamide
- 20 and pharmaceutically acceptable salts of such compounds.

7. A process for the preparation of a compound of Claim 1 which comprises reacting a compound having a formula:
- 25

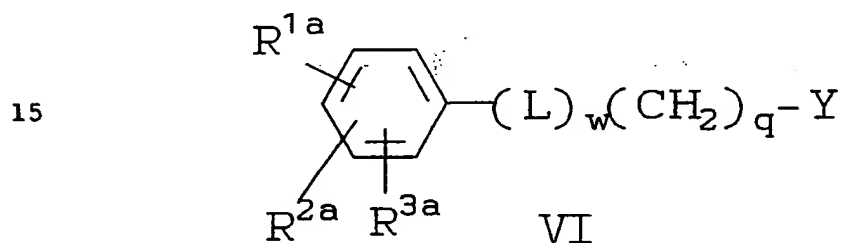


-342-

where R^1 , R^2 , R^6 , X , n and p are as defined in Claim 1 with a compound having the formula:



where R^5 and A are as defined in Claim 1 and G is a protecting group; which step is either followed by or preceded by the treatment of the compound with

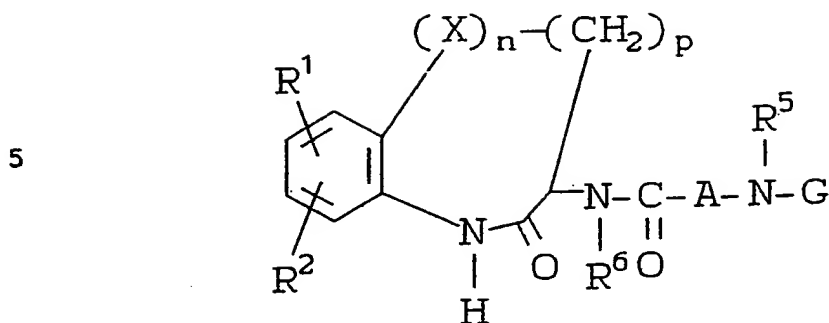


where R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{3a} , L , w and q are as defined in Claim 1 and Y is a leaving group, followed by the replacement of the protecting group with R^4 .

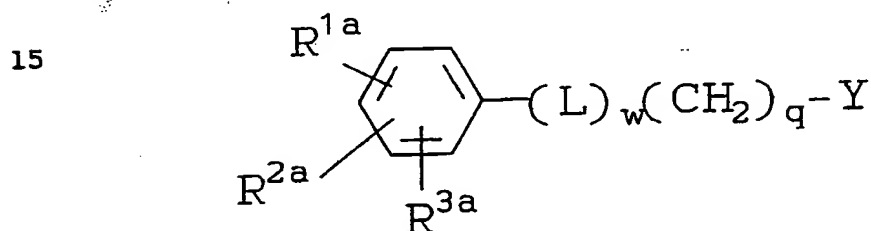
8. The process of Claim 7 where compound III is first reacted with compound IV followed by reaction with compound VI.

9. A process for the preparation of a compound of Claim 1 which comprises reacting a compound having a formula:

-343-



10 where R^1 , R^2 , R^5 , R^6 , X , n and p are as defined in Claim 1 and G is a protecting group, with a compound having the formula:



VI

20

where R^{1a} , R^{2a} , R^{3a} , L , w and q are as defined in Claim 1 and Y is a leaving group, followed by replacement of the protecting group G with R^4 .

25

10. The process of Claim 9 where the protecting group G is t-butoxycarbonyl or benzyloxycarbonyl and L is chlorine, bromine, iodine, O-methanesulfonyl or O-(p-toluenesulfonyl).

30

11. A method for increasing levels of endogenous growth hormone in a human or an animal which comprises administering to such human or animal an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

-344-

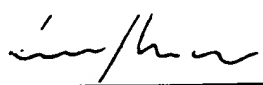
12. A composition useful for increasing the endogenous production or release of growth hormone in a human or an animal which comprises an inert carrier and an effective amount of a compound of Claim 1.

13. A composition useful for increasing the endogenous production/release of growth hormone in a human or an animal which comprises an inert carrier and an effective amount of a compound of Claim I used in combination with other growth hormone secretagogues such as, GHRP-6 or GHRP-1, growth hormone releasing factor (GRF) or one of its analogs, IGF-1 or IGF-2, or B-HT920.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

PCT/US 92/02271

I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER (If several classification symbols apply, indicate all) ⁶		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC		
Int.Cl. 5	C07D403/10; C07D227/10;	C07D223/16; C07K5/06;
	C07D401/10; C07D281/10;	C07D417/10 A61K31/33
II. FIELDS SEARCHED		
Minimum Documentation Searched ⁷		
Classification System	Classification Symbols	
Int.Cl. 5	C07D ; C07K	
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched ⁸		
III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT⁹		
Category ¹⁰	Citation of Document, ¹¹ with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages ¹²	Relevant to Claim No. ¹³
A	EP,A,0 349 949 (FUJISAWA) 10-January 1990 see page 49 - page 53; claims ---	1-13
A	EP,A,0 166 357 (MERCK) 2 January 1986 see page 54 - page 59; claims ---	1-13
A	JOURNAL OF MEDICINAL CHEMISTRY vol. 32, no. 8, August 1989, WASHINGTON pages 1681 - 1685; PARSONS W. H.: 'Cholecystokinin Antagonists. Synthesis and biological evaluation of 3-substituted benzolactams.' ---	1-13
<p>¹⁰ Special categories of cited documents:</p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"A" document member of the same patent family</p>		
IV. CERTIFICATION		
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search	Date of Mailing of this International Search Report	
05 AUGUST 1992	14. 08. 92	
International Searching Authority	Signature of Authorized Officer	
EUROPEAN PATENT OFFICE	LUYTEN H.W. 	

**ANNEX TO THE INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT
ON INTERNATIONAL PATENT APPLICATION NO. US 9202271
SA 59195**

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned international search report.
The members are as contained in the European Patent Office EDP file on
The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information. 05/08/92

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP-A-0349949	10-01-90	AU-A- 3785989	11-01-90
		CN-A- 1041941	09-05-90
		JP-A- 2056481	26-02-90

EP-A-0166357	02-01-86	JP-A- 61015875	23-01-86
		US-A- 4692522	08-09-87

EPO FORM P007

For more details about this annex : see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/82